

1713.

Kobon.

SECT. II.

Stellenbosch Colony.

When first settled. Division into Quarters. Hottentots Holland. Falzo Bay: Dangerous Sea-son for Ships: Fall of Fish: Fishery there. Sea-Cow Valley. The Sheep Mountain. Soil and Produce. Square Fort, Wild Beasts. Laurence River. Other Rivers. Name of Sea-Fish. Mottergate Quarter: Often overflowed. Stellenbosch Quarter: The chief Village: The Improvements. Stellenbosch River: A fine Bridge over it: Another Bridge. Bottelary Quarter. Horse-Mountain. Jolien-Hill. Water and Fuel scarce. Corruption punished.

When first settled.

THIS Colony was first settled by the Governor, Simon Vander Stel, from whom it has the Name of *Stellenbosch*, or *Stel's Bush*: It was before called by the Dutch, the *Wild-Beest*, from its being almost wholly covered with wild Shrubs and Bushes. The *Hottentots* had also in a Manner abandoned it, and it was become the Haunt of wild Beasts; but the Ground being cleared, it soon rivalled the *Cape Colony*, in Houses, Corn-Fields, Vineyards, and Gardens.

BETWEEN these two Colonies lie certain large, sandy Tracts. *Stellenbosch* Colony is divided into four Parts, or Quarters; *Stellenbosch*, *Mottergate*, *Hottentots-Holland*, and the *Bottelary*.

Hottentots-Holland.

HOTTENTOTS-HOLLAND was so called by the Dutch, not from any Resemblance it has to *Holland in Europe*, but from its appearing to be the properest Part about the *Cape* for raising the Company's Cattle, this Quarter being fertile and well-watered.

THERE are two Roads from the *Cape* to *Hottentots-Holland*, one over the sandy Hills, called *Daymen*, or *Devons*, in the great *Tyger Valley*, and through Part of *Stellenbosch*; the other through the *Kloof*, and over a Mountain which has yet obtained no Name. That through the Valley is the most commodious; but the other, though troublesome to pass, is the most delightful, as affording several fine Prospects of the Bays and the Country.

Falzo Bay.

FALZO Bay, which is one of those in View, is formed by a Chain of Mountains. Those on the East Side are called *Hottentots-Holland Mountains*: Those on the West, which are contiguous to the *Stone-Hills*, have obtained no Name; excepting that which terminating the Bay on this Side, extends itself six Leagues into the Sea, running out to a Point, as do most of the Moun-

tains on the Coast of *Norway*, and therefore called *Norwegen*.

Dutch Colony.

THIS Bay is ten Leagues in Circumference. It was long imagined, that its Bottom was covered with Stones, and that an Anchor could no where be safely lodged in it; but this Report being discovered to be false, the Bay was thereupon called *Falzo* (or *Falsa*). In 1702 it was examined by an experienced Mariner. There is, indeed, no Riding for Ships in the high South-East Winds, which have torn Vessels from their Anchors, (though held by the thickest Cables) and stranded or dashed them to Pieces against the Rocks. In the Middle of the Bay there is a large Rock, rising considerably above the Water, upon which great Numbers of Sea-Birds breed.

Dangers of the Bay.

THE Bay is plentifully provided with various Kinds of delicate Fish. The Author went often, with others, to call the Net here, and every Time loaded a Wagon, which eight Oxen (the Number constantly in the Team) had much ado to drag home. He had once, in one Draught, twelve thousand large Shads, with a vast Number of small Fishes like Herrings, a great many Gold and Silver Fishes, besides other Kinds.

THE Mouths of the *Stellenbosch* and *Hottentots-Holland* Rivers that fall into the Bay abound with Fish: But the greatest Plenty of all is found at a Place called the *Fish Hook*, just under the Rock, or Mountain, which terminates the Bay on the East Side, called *Hang-Lip*, from the Resemblance it has to a Lip hanging over the Chin. The Company had, for a considerable Time, a Fishery there, for supplying their Slaves at the *Cape*; for it seems they prefer Salt-Fish and Rice to Bread and Meat: But such Tricks were played in it, and such Misrepresentations artfully made of it to the Company, that they laid it aside.

a fishery there.

UPON this, the Governor, *Adrian Vander Stel*, erected here a stately Fish-House, and seized the Company's Nets, Tackle, and Fishing-Boats to his own Use. His Father and Brother *Francis* had Fish-Houses in other Places, and thus they engrossed the Fishery at the *Cape*. Others were prohibited by the Government from fishing out of *Table-Bay* to the Prejudice of the Burghers, who at last applied to the Company for Redress.

IN *November*, 1710, a dreadful Hurricane, at South-East, blew the Waters of this Bay, in mighty Floods, far up into the Country; and when they retreated, several thousand Bushels of Fish, of all Sorts and Sizes, were found upon the dry Land: But being pretty distant from the Settlements, they reaped little Benefit by this Plenty.

1713.

Kalen.

Sea-Cow
Valley.

ABOUT AN Hour's Distance from the Side of *Falze-Bay* is the *Sea-Cow Valley*; so called from the *Sea-Cows** which frequented it, till the Slaughter *Europians* made of them, drove them to other Retreats. There is in this Valley a Lake, or Pond, about a League in Compass, in which grow Reeds so numerous and high above the Water, that one cannot see fairly over it. Among these Reeds breed wild Ducks, and a great many other Birds.

THE Sea at certain Times, when the Wind blows boisterously to the Shore, overflows this Valley, carrying with it an infinite Number of Fish, which thrive there, except some, which die when the Water of the Lake recovers its natural Sweetness.

The Sheep
Mountain.

THE *Hottentot-Holland Hills* (of which the *Hang-Lip* is one) are much higher than the *Table-Hill*, and are, like that, covered with a white Cloud for all the Time the South-East Wind reigns. There is a Mountain in the Midst of *Hottentot-Holland*, called the *Sheep Mountain*, being continually covered with Plenty of Grass, and stocked with Sheep. From the Summit of this Mountain you have a fine Prospect into the *Table-Bay* and over the Shipping; for which Reason *Adrian Vander Stel* intended to have erected a Pleasure-House there; but he not been called to Europe to give an Account of his Male-Administration.

Sea and
River.

HOTTENTOT-HOLLAND is by much the most fertile, commodious and pleasant Part of the *Stellenbosch Colony*. The said *Vander Stel* drew immense Profit from the large Corn-Fields, Vineyards and Gardens which he enjoyed here. His great Cattle being increased to about one thousand two hundred, and his small to above twenty thousand, he seized more than thirty Leagues Extent of Land Eastward towards *Terra de Natal*, where he had several large Places for rearing them. He likewise erected in *Hottentot-Holland*, besides other sumptuous Edifices, a spacious Castle; which, when his Estates were confiscated, the Company obliged him to demolish at his own Expence.

Lagoon Fort.
Wind Shop.

IN the Infancy of the Settlement, the Dutch had a square earthen Fort not far from the Side of *Palm-Bay*, mounted with four Guns, to defend the Colony on that Side against the *Hottentots*, and give Notice at the Guns on the Appearance of an Enemy in the Bay; but it is now gone to Ruin.

THIS Quarter was formerly a great Haunt of wild Beasts, but having been destroyed and

frightened into remote Quarters by Powder and Ball, at present rarely any are seen here besides Deer and Goats of several Kinds.

Dutch
Colonies.

THROUGH this Quarter run three Rivers, which rise in Mountains, and fall into *Falze-Bay*. The first or principal, called *Lawrence River*, from one of the Name drowned in it, passes by the demolished Castle of *Vander Stel*. It has its Source on the Mountains adjoining to that called *Turn-again*, from a Path which lies over it to *Drackensteen Colony*, and has several Turnings for avoiding Precipices and a Labyrinth of Rocks. This River in the rainy Seasons frequently overflowing, and in the dry Seasons being frequently quite dry, *Adrian Vander Stel* made a very spacious Basin under the Mountains to receive the Rain-Water which descended from them. By this Means in one Season he prevented the Overflowing of his Lands, and in the other supplied the River with Water as he saw convenient. From this Basin the Water was conveyed by a large Canal to his Wine-House, and from thence to a Water-Mill he had in *Stellenbosch Quarter* for grinding his Corn: After this, the Streams run into *Lawrence River*, which passes by the Foot of the *Sheep Mountain*. Its Mouth is very wide, and stored with Fish.

NEITHER of the two other Rivers, which flow but wash several fine Estates, has obtained any Name, or have near so much Water as the former. None but Sea Fish is to be found in any of those Rivers. Nor will River Fish live in them; probably, because they rise but a few Hours Distance from the Sea. Their Bottoms are very rugged and stony, and their Waters very salt.

THE *Mottergate*, or muddy Quarter, of the *Mottergate Stellenbosch Colony*, takes its Name from the Quarters Floods which remain a considerable Time in the Valleys after the Rains, and render the Roads impassable.

THIS Division lies North of *Hottentot-Holland*, being quite enclosed by that Colony, *Stellenbosch Quarter* and River. It is inferior to no Part of all the Settlements for the Beauty and Number of Houses, Fertility of the Soil, and other Advantages. The Land throughout, which consists of little Rinsings and Fallings, is well watered by *Stellenbosch River*, and a great many Rivulets that fall into it. These in the rainy Seasons frequently overflow and become impassable, especially two of the Rivulets, (which then were all nameless) so that, for a considerable Time, all Intercourse between the Inhabitants on both Sides is cut-off, and many can hardly stir from their

* As it is vulgarly called, says the Author, but by the Learned, the *Hippopotamus*, or *River-Horse*.

See *Kal. van's Voyage*, vol. a. p. 30. 2d. seq.

The same, p. 27.

The same, p. 31. 2d. seq.

The *Europians* here never give any Names to Rivers or Streams, till distinguished by the drowning of a Man, or some other Accident.

then Homes to mind their Affairs. Those Floods are sometimes so sudden and violent as to sweep away and drown several small Cattle before the Owners are aware. These Inconveniences might be remedied, if the Inhabitants could be induced to build high Bridges, for which they have Timber enough.

The *Stellenbosch* Quarter is nearly of the same Compais with *Pattentat-Holland*, and is altogether as fertile, pleasant, and commodious. It is in a Manner encompassed with Mountains of the same Name, which are by much the loftiest in all the Neighbourhood. Each Mountain pretty much resembles, in Height and Shape, the *Toll-Hill*, and like this also is covered with a white Cloud, when the South-East Winds take Place: But these Winds blow differently there from what they do in the *Table-Vally*; for there they rage Day and Night, excepting one Hour about Noon, and an Hour about Midnight, at which Times they become pretty still. There likewise two opposite Winds often meet, and dispute, as it were, for Victory, causing very dreadful Hurricanes; whereas, under the *Stellenbosch* Mountains, they cease their Raging about Evening, and continue pretty still till after Midnight. Neither on those Hills do contrary Winds meet.

In the Clefts of them there grows Abundance of Wood for Fuel, but none for building; and their Summits abound with sundry Sorts of very curious Herbs and most beautiful Flowers.

The principal Village in this Settlement is called *Stellenbosch*, which was lately adorned with a beautiful Church and Council-House: But these, with every House in the whole Village, excepting three or four, were, in 1710, burnt down by Means of some live Coal which a Negro Slave, of the Land-Droft of this Colony, was carrying for his Master to light his Pipe with; for as he entered the Apartment, the South-East Wind blowing very fiercely, drove the Coals against the Roof of the House, which being of Reeds, took Fire in an Instant, and in less than two Hours did all that Mischief. Within four Years the Houses were handsomely rebuilt; but the Church and Council-House are still in Ruins.

The Valleys of this Quarter are divided into most charming Corn-Fields, Vineyards, and Gardens. The Houses here are very commodious and beautiful, particularly one formerly belonging to a Clergyman, which makes a noble Figure, and is accompanied with the most elegant and useful Improvements of every Kind: But the Parson came not very honourably by it; for the Sur-intendant of his Church having employed him to request it for him of the Governor, *A-*

dem Vander Stel, he begged and obtained it for himself, planted and enjoyed it till the Year 1701; when all the Company's immediate Servants at the Cape being obliged to part with the Estates they had there in Land, he sold his for twenty thousand Florins. It is contiguous to the Sea, where there is constantly good Fishing: It is provided with Game, and may, indeed, be called a *Nomarch* at the Cape.

Several fine Estates likewise are situate on the *Stellenbosch* River, vying with each other for Beauty and Plenty. This River has its Source on the *Stellenbosch* Mountains, and being enlarged by the *Metergote* Streams, falls at length into *Kalk-Bay*. Its Bottom is pebbly: It yields nothing but small Fry, such as a Sort of Eels, and Fish like Smelts or Sprats. Near the Bay the Fishes are larger, and sea-Fishes are sometimes found among them.

OVER this River the Colony erected a Bridge, but so narrow and ill contrived, that Waggon's were sometimes overturned into the Water. A Gentleman, who had a fine Estate near it, observing that his Neighbours were not inclined to remedy it at a common Expence, with the Consent of the Council of *Stellenbosch* built a large and stately Bridge at his own Charge; covenanting moreover with them, that no Person should at any Time pay him or any other any thing by Way of Toll for passing over his Bridge, or for passing through any Road or Path in his Grounds that might lead to it.

ADRIAN VANDER STEL, when Governor, erected over the same River such another beautiful Bridge for his own Convenience, at the Company's Expence. On his Removal, it was let-run to Decay, and though the Repairs would not be very expensive, none would bestow them on it, in Hatred to his Memory.

It was from the Gentlemen in this Quarter that the Author, who resided there for a considerable Time as Secretary to the *Stellenboschian* and *Drakenstein* Colonies, received the best Part of his Informations.

The *Bottelary* Quarter or Division is the most Northerly Part of the Colony; it has the *Stellenbosch* Quarter on the South, *Drakenstein* on the East and West, and *Mogel-Bank* River on the North. The Name seems to be derived from the Abundance of Hay in this Quarter, more being made here than in all the other Parts about the Cape together; for almost all the Grass in the other Quarters is consumed on the Ground by the Cattle.

This Quarter is separated from the *Draken-Horste* Colony by the *Hurfs-Mountain*, so called

* Kellens's Voyage, vol. 2. p. 36, & seq.

* The same, p. 39. & seq.

* The same, p. 38.

* The same, p. 25, & seq.

1713
Kallien.
Julien Hill.
because it was formerly a great Haunt of wild a
Horses. No other in all the *Bettlers* seem to
deserve the Name of an Hill; for that called the
Julien-Hill, from one *Julien* who first dwelt on it,
is too low for one: However upon it are several
fine Vineyards and Orchards. It is likewise cov-
ered with fine pasture Ground, and the most
fruitful Fields, almost up to the Summit. Among
these is a considerable and very beautiful Estate
belonging to a Parson of *Stellenbosch*, who, for
Reasons known only to himself, cut his Throat
with a Penknife from Ear to Ear. The Company
had formerly on this Hill several Farms and Nur-
series for Cattle, but being defrauded by the
Owners of the adjacent Lands, to whose Care
they had committed them, they were obliged to
sell their Interests there.

Water and
Pastures.
THE Rain-Water that is collected in small
Lakes and Ditches in this Quarter becomes
brackish during the Summer, and at length near
as salt as Sea Water, if it meets not with any
fresh; yet, for want of better, the neighbouring
Inhabitants are often obliged to make use of it.
Fuel is likewise scarce here, the Country furnish-
ing nothing for that Purpose but Shrubs and small
Bushes. The Planters indeed covenanted with
the Company to keep so many Acres continually
planted with Wood, on Penalty of forfeiting
their Estates; but this Condition was never in
any Degree observed by them.

Corruption
prevailed.
THE Company has planted sundry Oaks here,
which are in a very flourishing Condition; and
the destroying or cutting down of a single Stick,
without a proper Authority, is punished with a
public Whipping by the common Hangman. A
certain wealthy Burgher at the *Cape* having pre-
vailed with one of the Company's Servants, for
a little Money, to cut several Branches from half
a Score of the young Oaks, and the Matter com-
ing to be discovered, the Government did not
indeed proceed to Whipping, but the Burgher was
imprisoned till he had paid a Fine of one hundred
Crowns, and the Servant banished to the *Rabben*
Island for Life.

SECT. III.

*Drakenstein and Wavaren Colonies, with Tierra
de Natal.*

1. *Drakenstein Colony.*

*When first settled. Name whence. Extent and
Bounds. Vexatious Mountain. Its Division.
Government. Mountain River. Air and Soil.*

*Dangerous Road. Noble Seat. Silver Mine. Dutch
Simon's Valley. Drakenstein Church. Pearl
Mountain. Waggon-Maker's Valley. Rie-
beeck's Castle. Barracks. Twenty-four Ri-
vers Quarter. Hand-Mills. Honey Moun-
tains. The Settlers few. Piquet Mountains.*

THE Settlement of *Drakenstein* was first be-
gun in the Year 1675, under the Govern-
ment of *Simon Vander Stel*. The States-General hav-
ing recommended the French Protestants, who,
in the Time of the late Persecution in France,
fled to Holland, to the Care and Protection of
their *India Company*, they transported great
Numbers of them with their Families to the
Cape and the other Colonies; being full, the
new Governor granted them Lands in *Draken-
stein*: But the Refugees were not the first Settlers
there. Certain Artificers and others, (many of
German Extraction) whose Times were out in
the Company's Service, had already planted se-
veral Tracts of Land: But much the greater
Part of the present Inhabitants are of French De-
cent.

KOLBEN charges *Tachard* with a great
many Falsities, and among the rest, for saying
this Colony was not originally called *Drakenstein*,
but *Hollenbosk**; judging, that he was imposed
on by *Simon Vander Stel*, who took a Pleasure in
palming Fictions on People, and would have per-
suaded him, that from an high Mountain, two
hundred Miles from the *Cape* towards *Monten-
tape*, he plainly both saw and heard the Grass
wave to and fro in the Moon.

THIS Colony had its Name given it by that
Governor, in Compliment to the Baron *Van
Rheeden*, who was Lord of *Drakenstein* in *Ger-
manland*. This was the least he could do, after
the Baron had confirmed him in his Post, and
approved of all his Proceedings.

DRAKENSTEIN Colony is as large as
all the low Countries in Europe put together. It
borders Southward on the *Turn-aguin-Mountain*
already mentioned; and towards the East, on a
long Chain of Hills, called the *Drakenstein Moun-
tains*: It extends Northward to *Seldanna Bay*,
and Westward to the *Hojs-Mountain*, which
separates it from the *Bettlers*. Towards the
same Quarter likewise it borders on several Hills
and Salt Pits.

THE *Drakenstein* Mountains are very high and
rugged. One of them, over which the Author
once travelled, is extremely rough and dangerous,
whence he named it the *Vexatious Mountain*. It

* *Kallien's Voyage*, p. 42. & page.

* *Tachard* says only, that in 1681 the *Heer Ponds* first settled a
new Colony, consisting of eighty-two Families, nine or ten Leagues from the *Cape*, and called it *Hollenbosk*.
Either *Tachard* or his Printer might mistake *Hollenbosk* for *Stellenbosch*. De *C'Isle* from him has inserted *Hollenbosk*
in his Map.

is very high, and so steep on every Side, that it is not to be ascended directly up: Besides, the Turnings and Windings are so many, tedious, and rugged, that it is vainly fatiguing to pass them. In many Places they are so narrow, that you can hardly get forward with your Horse, and in others to sleep and embarras'd with large pointed Stones, that you are obliged to alight and lead your Horse. What is worse, Travellers are in some Places obliged to pass on the very Edges of great Precipices, from which sometimes both Man and Beast have tumbled.

Division,
Government.

THIS Colony may be divided into four Districts. 1. The Part between the *Turn-again-Mountain* and the Church. 2. The Part between the Church and the *Waggon-Maker's Valley*. 3. The *Waggon-Maker's Valley* itself, which may be divided into two Parts; one containing what lies within the Bounds of the Colony, the other such Lands as belong to it, yet lie without.

LARGE as *Drakenstein* is, there is in it neither Village nor Council-House. The Farms and Houses are, most of them, at a considerable Distance from one another; and all the public Buildings there, are the Church (which stands near the Middle of the Colony) and the Water-Mill. The Burgomasters repair, for the Dispatch of public Business, to *Stellenbosch*, where they sit and act in Conjunction with the Burgomasters of the *Stellenbosch* Colony, the Intendant or Land-Droft of the two Colonies always presiding.

THERE are in *Drakenstein* a great Number of very fine Farms, but very few stately Seats and Pleasure-Houses: For the Refugees began the World here under great Incumbrances, and were obliged to contract many Debts, which are not yet discharged; so that the Generality of them are content to dwell in little Huts.

Mountains
River.

THE *Mountain River* (so called from having its Source on the Mountains, not far from the *Nasatius* one) passes by the Church, and is there pretty large, receiving several Rivulets in its Way to it. A great many fine Estates or Farms lie on both Sides at about half an Hour's Distance from one another; yet the Planters complain that there is not Pasturage sufficient for their Cattle, though Grass grows in Plenty everywhere.

THERE has been yet no Bridge built over the *Mountain River*, although the Colony hardly stands in Need of any thing more: For though in the Summer Season, that is, from *October* to *April*, the River is hardly any-where more than Knee-deep, and in many Places it is to be walked over dry-shod; yet in Winter it overflows with the Floods from the Mountains, and the Stream is then so high and deep, that twice a

Year passes but somebody is drowned in attempting to cross it on Horseback.

THIS River passes through the *Waggon-Maker's Valley*, with many Windings and Turnings. From hence it passes through several *Hottentot* Countries into the Bay of *St. Helen*, which is above an hundred German Miles from the source of the River.

THIS Part is mountainous and stony, yet very fertile. The Air is serene and healthful, the Waters plentiful and good. The Hills here, like most others about the *Cape*, are, during *June* and *July*, which make the Depth of Winter, covered with Hail and Snow, which continue on them till the Middle of *August*, sometimes of *September*, when the Thaw fills all the Channels in the Colony with Water.

IN the Way from *Turn-again-Mountain* to the *Burgomaster's Church* you see on the Left a Road which leads to *Stellenbosch*; and on account of the many Dan-
gers to which it exposes those who travel it, is called *Bange Hekel*, or *Fearful*. It is frequently infested with wild Beasts, is very deep, narrow, and stony: It likewise leads you on the Edges of Precipices and Pits of Water. In the Night, Horses, on the Approach of a Lion or Tyger, (for they sell wild Beasts) have started with their Riders into those Pits and Precipices, where both have perished.

YET troublesome and dangerous as this Road is, there are several Seats and Estates of Note in and near it. Among the rest there is a Seat built upon it, which for Beauty and Convenience, the Author thinks, nothing in all *Africa* can come up to. It belonged to M. *Mulder*, Lieutenant, or Land-Droft, of the *Stellenbosch* and *Drakenstein* Colonies, a Gentleman of great Virtue and Accomplishments.

Noble Seat,
Silver Mine.

A SILVER and a Copper Mine were sometime ago discovered near this Road: Very promising Samples of the Ores were immediately sent to the Directors; but hitherto they have not thought fit to order them to be wrought.

FROM hence Northward lies *Simon's Valley*; so called by M. *Blyssus*, the Fiscal Independent at the *Cape*, in Compliment to the Governor, *Simon Vander Stel*, who granted it to him. *Blyssus*, by dividing this Valley into Corn-Fields, Vineyards, and Gardens, quickly made a noble Estate of it, on which he erected a stately House, a Mill, and a Wine-House. But upon the Company's Ordinance, in 1707, in favour of the Burgers, that none of their Servants at the *Cape* should traffic in Corn, Wine, or Cattle, he sold his Estate to a Servant of his for twenty-four thousand Florins, to be paid at the Rate of two thousand a Year.

1713.

Kolben.

NEAR *Simon's Valley* there is a Mountain, called, on account of its Height, the *Babylonian Tower*, where there are several fine Estates.

Draken-
stein Church.

THE Church of *Drakenstein*, before-mentioned, stands about fourteen German Miles, North-East, from the *Cape-Town*. This is such a lofty Building, that you would take it for a very ordinary Barn, it being covered with Reeds, and the Wall not above four Foot high. Nothing within is to be seen but bare Walls and Reeds, a few plain Benches to sit on, with a wretched Pulpit and Desk.

UPON a fine Estate contiguous to the Church, is held a Sort of Market for the Sale of Groceries, Small-Wares, and other domestic Things, brought from the *Cape* to supply the common People.

Pearl-Moun-
tain.

SEVERAL fine Estates lie on both Sides the Church, and the Road leading thence to the *Mountain-Rivers* and *Waggon-Maker's Valley*, from whence it passes by the *Pearl-Mountain*, so called from a large Stone on the Top, which the common People imagine resembles a Pearl. This Mountain, which is rocky, supplies them with good Mill-Stones.

Waggon-
Makers Val-
ley.

THE *Waggon-Maker's Valley* is so called from the first Settler, who was a Waggon-Maker, the *Hottentots* abandoning their Possessions there as soon as the *Europeans* appeared to plant it: But the Buildings and Plantations are not yet brought to any Perfection; wherefore the Author passes them over to give an Account of such Places as lie without the Bounds of the Colony, but are considered as Appurtenances of it: These are *Riebeck's Castle*, the *Twenty-four Rivers*, the *Honey Mountain*, and the *Piquet Hills*.

Riebeck's
Castle.

RIEBECK'S CASTLE is a very high and steep Mountain, taking its Name from *M. Van Riebeck*, first Governor of the *Cape*, upon, and contiguous to which are several Plantations; and there would be many more (so inviting is the Soil) could they be conveniently provided with good Water. Only one Spring has been yet discovered here by digging. It was done at the Expence of one *Vander Byl*, a Planter, and was enjoyed in common till the Government granted it to a private Person: Hence they are obliged, as formerly, to make use of Rain-Water, which they receive in Pits and Ditches; but by standing it becomes extremely brackish.

Barroch.

IN the Infancy of the *Cape* Settlement, the Government erected here Barracks for an hundred Men, with Stables for as many Horses; and kept posted a good Body of Horse, as an advanced Guard against the *Hottentots*. A great Gun was likewise planted hard-by to give No-

tice on the Appearance of any considerable Body of them: But the Treaty of Alliance rendering those Precautions useless, the Places are now in Ruins.

THE Quarter called the *Twenty-four Rivers*, from its Number of Streams, is about a Day's Journey to the North of *Riebeck's Castle*, and affording good Pasture, is full of Cattle and well inhabited: But no Land has been yet granted in Property, People only settling there by License; which they are obliged to renew with the Government every six Months: Hence their Houses are but like Shepherds Huts, none caring to build. They are likewise allowed to till no more Ground than what is necessary to yield them Grain for their Subsistence. The Soil is extremely fertile, producing Corn from twenty-five to thirty-Fold, and frequently more.

THERE being neither Wind nor Water-Mill in this Part, the Inhabitants have their Corn ground by their Negroes, in little Hand-Mills like Coffee-Mills. These they fix to the Wall, with a Sack under each to receive the Flour; which is used, just as it comes from the Mill, without any Cleaning. This Way of Grinding is very laborious.

THE *Honey Mountain*, so called from the great Quantities of Honey the Bees make in the Clefts of them, are about a Day's Journey from the *Twenty-four Rivers*. Under a hot Sun, the Honey, together with the Wax, melts and runs down very plentifully; but the *Hottentots* must clamber up great and very perilous Heights to get at it. They put it in Bags made of Skins, the hairy Side inward, and thus sell it to the *Europeans* for a little Tobacco, Brandy, or Trinkets of Glass or Brass.

THE Whites inhabiting on and about these Mountains are but few, and no other than Tenters of Cattle. They are only Settlers by License, and allowed to till like the former: But being infected with the *Hottentots* Vice of Idleness, they make no Use of that Liberty. They neither sow nor purchase Corn, nor have any such Thing as Bread. Their Way is to eat Flesh with Flesh; that is to say, a Piece of Beef, or Mutton, with a Piece of smoked or dried Venison. Their Drink is only Water, Milk, and Honey-Beer; which Way of Feeding proves so healthful to them that they are become Strangers in a Manner to every Distemper.

ABOUT a Day's Journey from the *Honey Mountain*, and eight from the *Cape*, are the *Piquet Mountains*, so called, it seems, from the first Settlers playing the Game of Piquet, from Morning till Night, at the Foot of them. The

* Kolben's Voyage, vol. 1. p. 49, & seq. of Natal.

† The same, p. 47, and 52.

‡ Double's, a Sort

1733:
Kolben

few Europeans who dwell about them are only a
Tenders of Cattle, which they sell at the Cape,
like those at the *Henry-Mountain*.

THE *Hottentots* live, with Abundance of A-
mity, mixed among the Europeans of both these
Quarters: Some Time ago, indeed, they were
alarmed with a Rumour, that the *Hottentots* had
threatened to seize their Cattle; but fifty Soldiers
and an hundred Burgers, well armed, having
been dispatched thither by the Land-Droft of the
Stellenbosch and *Drakenstein* Colonies, the Diffi-
culty was quickly composed.

2. *Wavoren Colony.*

*Wavoren Colony: Name and Bounds. Red-Sand
Mountain. Black-Land. Water: Hot Baths.
Author in Danger from Elephants and Lions.*

Wavoren
Colony.

THE Settlement of the Colony of *Wavoren*
(called also the *Wassersij Quartier*) was be-
gun in the Year 1703; under the Governor,
William Vander Stel, and so called by him, in
honour of an illustrious and wealthy Family, of
the Name of *Van Wavoren* in *Amsterdam*, to
which he was related. It was formerly called the
Red Sand, from a Mountain, yielding red Sand,
which separates it from *Drakenstein* Colony. It
lies twenty-five or thirty *German* Miles from the
Cape, being the Settlement farthest Eastward
from thence.

Rends.

As it is the youngest of the *Cape* Colonies, it
has yet received no certain Boundaries. The
Tracts of Land in Occupation there are sur-
rounded by Mountains, which have yet received
no Names. Its peoples so full that it will quickly
be full: Yet the Lands are held here only by Li-
cense, from six Months to six Months, and are
therefore only used as Pasture, nor are the Houses
upon them any better than Shepherds Huts. Most
of the Cattle there belongs to the Inhabitants of
the Colonies, who have not Pasture enough near
home.

Red-Sand
Mountain.

THE *Red-Sand* Mountain is very high and
steep, terminating in a Cone. The Waggon
that pass between this Colony and the *Cape* have
a great deal of Labour to get over it. Being
generally unloaded at the Foot of the Hill, and
taken to Pieces, they, with the Goods, are car-
ried over on the Backs of the Cattle in the Teams,
and of the Drivers; for the Road across the
Mountain being very narrow, stony, and in many
Places thick-set with Trees on both Sides, it costs
a great deal of Time and Labour to drive the
Waggon over, which are often on the Point of
pulling the Team backwards and tearing all
apart.

THE Part called the *Black-Land* is contiguous
to the *Red-Sand* Mountain. The Soil is very
fertile, yielding a vast Increase of every Sort of
Grain that has been sown upon it; yet very little
of it has been hitherto tilled.

THE Inhabitants of *Wavoren* repair to the
Church of *Drakenstein*, and frequently to the
Cape, having yet no Places of public Wor-
ship among themselves; but for Marriages and
Christenings, they are confined wholly to the
Church at the *Cape*. They are within the Juris-
diction of *Stellenbosch*, all civil and criminal Mat-
ters there being determined by the *Stellenboschian*
Magistrates.

THE Colony is plentifully provided with good
Water, and has two hot Baths, in one of which
there is no enduring a Limb; but after about two
Hours Run it becomes very agreeable to bathe in.
The hot Bath behind the *Hottentot-Holland*
Mountains, at about six *English* Miles Distance
from the first of the two, and about thirty *Ger-
man* Miles, South-East, from the *Cape*, is much
frequented, and very justly recommended. One
Appel has the Property of it, and makes a large
Profit by it.

THE Author, who received much Benefit
from it, going thither one Day, met six wild
Elephants making their Way to a neighbouring
Water. The Sight of them put him in a great
Fright; but they passed and took no Notice of
him. Another Time, going to a Bath, with
three *Hottentots* for Guards, at Night they made
a Fire to fright-away the wild Beasts, and having
set-up his Tent, he went to Rest; but his Slum-
ber was soon interrupted by the Approach of
eleven Lions, who advanced with such terrible
Roarings as would have shook the firmest Heart
under the Heavens. The dreadful Noise pierced
the Author through and through, and he expected
every Minute to be torn to Pieces: But his
Guards taking burning Wood from the Fire, and
throwing it briskly about them, the Beasts made-
off, and they heard no more of them.

3. *Tierra de Natal.*

The Inhabitants. Their Traffic. Story of an
Englishman settled there. Account of the Shop
of the Dutch Settlement.

IT has been already observed, that this Coun-
try was purchased by the Dutch to enlarge
their Possessions. It is inhabited by the *Kaffre*,
who, according to all the Accounts Kolben had
met with, are so far from bearing any Affinity
with the *Hottentots*, that they are a quite different
Sort of People. Captain *Gorvanza Vander Schel*

1713.

Kellen.

has, a Man of Intelligence and Veracity, who had often touched at *Tierra de Natal*, informed the Author, that the Inhabitants do not anoint or grease their Bodies; that they have nothing of the *Hottentot* Stammering, or Manner of Utterance; that they dwell in square plastered Houses, a Sort of Building not seen among the *Hottentots*: That they wear Crofles which hang by a String that runs about the Neck, an Ornament that has no Place in the *Hottentot* Countries: That they manage their Land after a Manner quite different from that of the *Hottentots*; that they sow a Sort of *Turkish Corn*, and brew with it, whereas the *Hottentots* neither sow nor brew.

The Trif.

for

These *Kaffrs* traffic with the Rovers of the *Red-Sea*, who bring them Manufactures of Silk for Elephants Teeth; which they exchange again for European Commodities with Ships that touch at *de Natal*, often for Tar, Anchors, and Cordage: These they exchange again with the Rovers of the *Red-Sea*. The Silk, which they put not off to the Europeans, they dispose of to the *Kaffrs* of *Monomotapa*. The Portuguese of *Monomotapa* trade not a little with them.

The Captain above-mentioned met with an Englishman at *Tierra de Natal*, who had deserted his Ship, and settled among the *Kaffrs*, among whom he had two Wives, and several Children by them. He was dressed like a *Kaffr*, and lived every Way like one.

Story of an Englishman.

He shewed the Captain several Piles of Elephants Teeth, and several Rooms full of silken Manufactures, proposing to embark with those Commodities for the *Cape*, and abandon his Settlement and Family for ever. The King of the Country having Notice of his Design, sent for him, and upbraided him for his intended Treachery and Ingratitude to a People who had received and cherished him after so generous a Manner; represented the miserable Condition of his Family if he abandoned it, for that he (the King) would take no Care of it, and he believed no-body else would: In Conclusion, admonished him so warmly on the Affection and Tenderness he owed to his Wives and Children, and on the Cruelty of deserting them, that the Fellow's Heart melted. He was not Proof against the Eloquence of this royal *Kaffr*, but falling at the King's Feet, begged Pardon, and gave-up his Design. This he related himself to the Captain, one of whose Men he afterwards prevailed upon to desert the Ship, and settle with him among the *Kaffrs*.

Story of a Dutchman.

It may not be amiss to add a Word here concerning our Map of the Country possessed by the Dutch at the *Cape of Good Hope*, which we have copied from Kellen. This Author informs us,

that it is a very exact Representation of the same: However we must observe, that he does not say it is his own, nor acquaint us how he came by it. It is, probably, the Copy of one which had been made by the Dutch at the *Cape*, and though it differs much from other Maps, as well as is more particular, and in the general may be accurate enough; yet it does not exactly tally with Kellen's Description, as we have sometimes observed in our Notes. The *Cape*, or Town itself, does not lie in the Latitude or Longitude, determined by that Author, which shows it could not be made by himself. The Map of the *Hottentot* Countries given by Tachard, and said to be made by the Dutch at the *Cape*, is a very mean Performance, and looks more like an Eye-Draught than a Map. Nieuhof has given a large Map of the *Cape* itself, and there is another in the English Pilots.

SECT. IV.

The Dutch Government at the Cape.

Form of it. Grand Council. College of Justice. Petty Court. Court of Marriages. Chamber of Orphans. Ecclesiastical Court. Court of Common-Council. Board of Militia. Charges of Government. Encouragement to Settlers. Alliance with the *Hottentots*. Their former Quarrels. A smart Skirmish. The *Hottentots* Charge against the Dutch. Some apply for a Peace: Others come-in. The English at the Cape. Story of Korea the *Hottentot*. Condemned English sent bers. Oversight of their East India Company.

THE present Dutch Government at the *Cape* owes its Foundation to M. Van Riebeeck, who laid the Plan of the first Settlement here in 1650. It consists of eight Establishments: 1. A grand Council, which manages all the Interests and Affairs of the Company. 2. A Court or College of Justice. 3. A petty Court for Assaults, Trespasses, and small Debts. 4. A Court of Marriages. 5. A Chamber of Orphans. 6. An Ecclesiastical Council. 7. A Common-Council. 8. A Board of Militia. These two last were instituted by Governor Simon Vander Stel, on the Arrival of a large Colony of French Refugees.

THE great Council consists of the Governor and eight of the principal Officers in the Company's Service. In this the Governor sits as President, with a double Vote. This is the sovereign Court of the *Cape*, which regards Trade and Navigation, makes and repeals Laws for the Colony, has a Power of declaring War and

1713. Peace. It is held in the Fort every Monday at nine in the Morning, and sits till Noon. The Members of this Court are highly respected.

College of Justice.

THE College of Justice is composed of the Members of the great Court, assisted by the three Regent Burgomasters of the Cape Town. In this Court are tried all civil and criminal Causes among the Cape Europeans. However, Appeals lie from its Decree: either to Batavia or Holland; but in this Case the Appellant must lodge in the Court an hundred Florins till final Judgment be given; which Sum is paid to the Respondent, if the Judgment be affirmed, or returned to the Appellant, if the Judgment be reversed.

Poor Court.

A PETTY Court, dependent on this, is constituted for Actions of Trespass, and the determining small Debts. It is composed of a Member of the great Council, who is President, three Cape-Burgers, one of whom is Vice-President, and four of the Company's immediate Servants, one of whom is Clerk. No Action can be brought into this Court for more than an hundred Crowns.

Court of Marriage.

THE Court of Marriages consists of the same Members. It inspects the Validity of all Marriage Contracts among the Europeans at the Cape, and sees that they be made with the Consent of Parents or Guardians on both Sides. On receiving this Satisfaction, it issues a Grant or Licence to the Minister of the Parish, where the Parties reside, for the Celebration of the Marriage.

Chamber of Orphans.

THE Chamber of Orphans consists of seven Members, the Vice-President of the great Council, who sits as President, three of the Company's Servants, and three Cape-Burgers, one of whom is usually Vice-President. No Orphan of Fortune at the Cape can marry, without the Consent of this Court, before the Age of twenty-five.

Ecclesiastical Court.

THE Ecclesiastical Court, or College, is instituted for the good Government of the reformed Churches here, which are three. It consists of the three Pastors of these Churches, six Elders, or Church-Wardens, each Church having two, and twelve Overseers of the Poor, whereof each Parish has four. To them belongs the Application of the Money given for the Maintenance of the Poor, which is so well managed, that not a Beggar is to be seen in all the Settlement. There is likewise a Vestry held in each Parish, consisting of one of the most wealthy or eminent Parishioners as President, the Minister, the two Elders, or Church-Wardens, and the four Overseers of the Poor.

• Court of Common Council.

IN each Colony at the Cape is a Court of Common-Council, consisting of a Number of Burgers belonging to each, chosen by the great

Council out of Lists prepared by the Burgesses of each Colony. As the Court of Justice sit at the Cape Town, the Common-Council there has little to do but to collect the Taxes laid by the great Council on the Burgesses. But in the other Colonies the Common-Councils are Courts of great Business and Authority. In these the Land-Droffs, or Lieutenants, of each Colony preside. They hear and determine all Causes not exceeding an hundred and fifty Florins, try and punish most Crimes committed in their Jurisdiction, and especially the Slaves.

THERE are two Boards of Militia, one at the Cape Town, in which a Member of the great Council always presides, assisted by nine of the principal military Officers of the Cape Colony. The other for the Stellenbosch and Drakenstein Colonies is held in the former, in which the Land-Droff of that Colony presides over nine of the chief Officers of both Colonies. Each Board has a Secretary, and once a Year the whole Militia are arrayed. When any of the Cape Slaves run away from their Masters, or on any hostile Appearance of the Hottentots, these Courts, on Application, send out a Party of Horse in Pursuit of them. It is the Duty of the Burgers in the several Colonies to keep watch by Night, but this Order is not much observed.

THE present flourishing State of the Cape Settlement is certainly a very shining Proof of the indefatigable Genius and Industry of the Dutch.

THE Expences of the Company in paying their Servants, qualified and unqualified, amounts to about four hundred thousand Florins per Annum. The Governor's Post is worth about six thousand Florins yearly. To defray this large Expence, they have a Tenth of the Produce of all Lands and Ground-Rent. The Duties on Wine, Tobacco, Brandy and Beer are farmed at seventy thousand Florins per Annum. This, with the Profit they make on their Merchandize here, fixing it at seventy-five per Cent. goes very near to reimburse them their Charges in supporting the Government; and as the Colonies are daily increasing, and their Lands taking-in, the Company have a Prospect of soon enjoying a clear and noble Revenue by this Settlement. The Number of their Servants is six hundred: Of their Slaves the same.

THE Indulgence and Generosity of the Company to new Settlers is very extraordinary. They supply them with Tools and Instruments of Husbandry. Where the Lands produce little, and the Settler is poor, they remit the Tenth till his Circumstances grow better. If they suffer by Fire, the Company readily contributes to repair

* Here, and often elsewhere, it is called the Stellenbosch Colony, by Mistake, perhaps, of the Translator or Printer: which confirms our Conjecture concerning its being named *Hellinbol* in *Tasman's Voyage*. See before, p. 340. Note.

* *Kelken's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 340, & 351.

1713.
Volcan.Alliance
with the
Hottentots.Three former
Agreements.A small
Sketch.

their Damage, by allowing them Materials for a building, and ordering its own Slaves and Artificers to assist in the Work.

ALL the *Hottentot* Nations live in Friendship and Alliance with the *Dutch*, who, by the Terror of their Arms, as well as their politic Government, have acquired a great Respect and Authority amongst them. This good Correspondence is kept up by annual Deputations from most of those Nations; who wait on the Governor of the *Cape* with Presents of Cattle, and are always well received, and sent back with such Presents as are most agreeable to them. By this Means the *Dutch* Governor is the Arbitrer of all Differences which arise, and has greater Authority than if he were really King of the Country.

It has already been observed, that before this Treaty of Alliance took Place, frequent Hostilities were committed between the *Hottentots* and the *Dutch*. *Dapper* informs us, that in the Year 1659, the *Garinbaiguan* (by whom, possibly, must be meant the *Quymenan*) disputed with them the Possession of the Country about the *Cape*, and endeavoured to turn them out: alleging, that they had inhabited the same Time out of Mind. On this Occasion they slew many of the *Dutch*, and carried-off their Cattle, always choosing to fight in stormy and rainy Weather, knowing that then they could do but little Execution with their Fire-Arms.

THEY were headed by two experienced stout *Hottentots*: One of them was called *Gurabinec*; the other *Nemsa*, but by the *Dutch*, *Deman*. This latter had been at *Batavia* five or six Years, and being returned to the *Cape*, kept a great while amongst them in *Dutch* Habit; but at last betook himself to his old Companions, informing them of the Intentions of the *Hollanders*, and instructing them in the Use of their Arms. Under these two Leaders they always came-off with Success.

AFTER the War had continued three Months, one Morning in *August* there went-out five *Hottentots* (one of whom was *Deman*) to forage; and having robbed a Countryman of two Beasts, five *Dutch* Horsemen rode after them. The *Hottentots* resisted them stoutly for some Time, wounding three of them: But at length, two of them being killed, and a third desperately wounded, *Deman* and the other escaped by swimming over a River.

THE wounded Person, named *Ephamma*, was shot through the Neck, had one of his Legs broken to Pieces, and a great Wound in his Head. Being brought into the Fort, and asked for what Reason his Countrymen had made War upon the *Dutch*, destroying them with Fire and Sword

wherever they came; he, though in excessive Pain, by Way of Reply, asked, "What was the Reason that they had ploughed and sowed their Lands, where they fed their Cattle, and by that Means took the Bread out of their Mouths?" He added, "That they fought to revenge themselves for the Wrongs done them; for that they were not only forbidden to come near those and other Pastures, which they had so long peaceably possessed, and where the *Dutch* had been permitted to come at first on Sufferance only; but they also saw their Countries divided and taken away without any Reason: Alking, if the *Dutch* had been so treated, how they would have acted?" He concluded, "That their strengthening themselves daily by Forts, could be for no other End but to bring them all, by Degrees, under Subjection." The *Hollanders* replied in short, that they had now lost the Country about the *Cape* by the War, and therefore they should never think to regain it either by Hostility or Peace.

THE last Discourse of this *Ephamma* (who died on the sixth Day) was, that he was only a mean Person, but advised them to invite his Governor to the Fort, in order to discourse the Business with him, and to restore every one his own again as far as possible, as the only Way to prevent farther Mischief. This being held for good Council, two or three *Dutchmen* were sent to desire the Governor *Geggsa* to come to the Fort and treat about a Peace, but all in vain: For the *Hottentots* continued the War so furiously, that the *Hollanders* scarce knew what Course to take; the Enemy driving away the Cattle of the Planters, who lived but two Hours Journey from the Fort, in Spite of the Guards, with so much Quickness, that it was impossible to overtake or retrieve them. This Matters continued for ten or eleven Months, but at last the Quarrel was decided in this Manner:

A CERTAIN *Hottentot* of Eminency, by the *Dutch* called *Herry*, and by the Natives *Kamje-maka*, being banished for some Crime to *Coney Isle*, after three Months Abode there, went in a dark Night with another Companion in a leaky Fishboat, furnished with two Oars, and came to the main Land, where they found their Friends the *Gurabanguan* and *Garinbaiguan*.

THE Escape of these two being told to the *Dutch* Governor, he sent in Quest of them six Men; who, the next Day, found the Boat about thirty Miles from the Fort, but met with no People in the Way. At length, in *February* 1660, *Herry* himself came to the Fort with the Governor of the *Negherry*, called *Kheri*, and an hundred other People, all unarmed. They brought

Dutch
Governor.
The
Hottentots
to the
Cape.

1713.
Koblen.

with them thirteen fat Cattle, desiring the Dutch would receive them in Token of Friendship, and to permit a free Intercourse with them as formerly. The Present was accepted, and it was farther agreed, that the *Hollanders* might sow as much Ground as lay within the Compass of three Hours Journey; but with this Proviso, that they should not plow any more than was already plowed. Upon ratifying this Agreement, the *Hottentots* were treated in the Fort with Bread, Tobacco, and Brandy.

Osteri came
in.

SHORTLY after, *Gegofa*, the General of the *Gorinbiquas*, or *Casquans*, came with *Khori* to the Fort, and made an Agreement. The Governor for their Entertainment ordered a Tub full of Brandy, with a wooden Dish in it, to be set among them. When the Men began to be intoxicated, about two or three hundred little Pieces of Tobacco were thrown amongst them, in scrambling for which they made a horrible Noise. The Noise and Hurly-burly over, they began to leap and dance, with several strange Gestures; the Women in the mean-while clapping their Hands, and continually singing, or rather roaring-out, *Ho, ho, ho, ho*.

AFTER this, the principal Persons were presented with Coral, Plates of Copper, and a little Roll of Tobacco. Having slept all Night in the Fort, they returned next Morning, only *Herry* remained there three or four Days. This *Herry* spoke a little English, which he learned by conversing with the English at *Bantam* in the *Indies*, whither he went in one of their Ships; but returning to the *Cape*, he went again among his own People.

The English
at the Cape.

CONSIDERING the advantageous Situation of the *Cape of Good Hope* for Shipping passing between *Europe* and *India*, and how long it had been frequented by the English, it may seem surprising that it never came into their Heads to settle there. In 1591, Captain *Raymond* touched at *Saldanna-Bay*, or, perhaps, rather *Table-Bay*, which succeeding English Navigators miscalled by the other Name. In 1601, Sir *Jamez Lancaster*, who was with *Raymond* before, put in there; as did Sir *Henry Middleton* in 1604, and 1610;

Davis and Sir *Edward Mitchellburne* in 1605; *David Middleton* in 1606; *Keeling* and *Sharpey* in 1607; *DeWinton* and *Hippen* in 1611; *Lake-wis Sarit*, in his Way to *Japan*: The Captains *Cassleton*, *Best* and *Ralph Wilson* in 1612; *Newport* in 1613.

IN 1614, Captain *Downton* set ashore here a *Hottentot*, called *Keree*, who had been brought over to *England* (in Company with another, who died) the preceding Year; and was clothed and entertained by Sir *Thomas Smith*, Governor of the *East India Company*. This African, far from rejoicing at his good Usage, though he had a Suit of Brass Armour given him, continually sighed for his own Country, so that the Company sent him home by that Commander; and he no sooner got ashore, but he threw away his Cloaths, and returned to his old Way of Living. But whenever any English Ships touched here, *Keree* was sure to be very serviceable in getting them Cattle, and what Refreshments they wanted.

Keree the
Hottentot.

IN 1614, the Captains *Milhoard* and *Peyster* touched here; the latter brought with him ten Men, condemned at the *Old Bailey*, who, at the Request of the *East India Company*, were banished here, and set ashore on *Progen-Isle*, now called by the Dutch, *Robben-Isle*, and used as a Prison for their Malefactors. These Men came to unhappy Ends, *Croft*, the Chief of them, being killed in a Scuffle with the Natives; four of them drowned in attempting to get aboard an English Ship; and the three Survivors, who were brought home, hanged for a Robbery they committed three Hours after their landing in *England*.

Gendron
English first
here.

It seems strange what Benefit the *East India Company* could propose by sending such Men ashore, when they might have made a valuable Settlement here with proper Care, and that long before the Dutch were apprized of the Importance of the Situation; for though *St. Helena*, which they occupied after, be a very commodious Place of Refreshment, it is by no Means equal to the *Cape* on many Accounts.

Benefit of
the India
Company.

* By *Casquans* are, probably, to be understood, the *Cape Hottentots*, rather than the *Koymans*.

Ogilby's Africa, p. 577, & seq.

* See this Collection, Vol. I. p. 390. Note 1. p. 391. Note 2. p. 447.

Note 4. * A further Proof that this was the *Table-Bay*, before which that Island lies.

C H A P. III.

The Manners and Customs of the Hottentots.

S E C T. I.

Their Persons, Virtues, Vices, and Language.

Hottentots, *their Name: Their Origin: Their Colour, Shape, Features. Qualities of their Body, and Mind. Their Vices, Laziness, Drunkenness: Undutifulness to Mothers: Exposing their Children, and Parents. Their Virtues: Benevolence: Hospitality. The Story of Klabs, a virtuous Hottentot. Their Language. Some of their Words. Numerical Terms, and Way of numbering.*

Hottentots,
their Name.

TACHARD and other Authors represent the Word *Hottentot* as a Nickname, taken from that Term being often in their Mouths, when they meet Strangers, or from their repeating *Hottentottum Brakwa* in their dancing. But **Kolben** observes, that they never use that Word in addressing Strangers; and that their making use of the other Terms in dancing, proves it to be their true Name, since they signify not Dutch Bread, as *Arnold* pretends, but Give the Hottentot his Hire. These Words are the Burden of a Song made in Repentment of a Dutch Chaplain, who defrauded a *Hottentot* of some Bread and Tobacco, which he had promised him for going on an Errand. In short, *Hottentot* seems to be the original national Name of these People, for they know of no other.

Their Ori-
gin.

THE *Hottentot* Origin is very obscure and uncertain: They say their first Parents came into their Country through a Window or Door-Passage; that the Name of the Man was *Nib*, and of the Woman, *Hingueb*; that they were sent into their Country by *Tikqua*, or God himself; and that they taught their Dependents to keep Cattle, and to do a great many other Things. Some Authors confound the *Hottentots* with the *Kafrs* of *Manootapa*; but it is a Mistake, for the latter are of a thin Black, and they differ entirely in their Manners and Customs.

Their Co-
lour.

THERE are few People who have been, by Authors, so differently represented as the *Hottentots*. Some represent them as Negroes in Point of Colour; others say, they are at Birth as white as *Europeans*; and **Tachard** speaks of white *Hottentots*. But **Kolben**, who resided several Years at

a the *Cape*, asserts, that the *Hottentot* Children, when born, are of a bright Olive, which, from their greasiness, catches a Shade as they grow-up, but still remains visible, however they disguise or plaister it.

Most of the Men are from five to six Foot *Shape*, and high; the Bodies of both Sexes well shaped. In *Person*. large Eyes, flat Noses, and thick Lips, they resemble the Negroes, with this Difference, that their Noses are depressed in Infancy by Art. Their Hair is like that of Negroes, short and woolly. The Men have large, broad Feet; those of the Women are small and tender. All the Females have an odd callous Excrecence growing just above the *Pudenda*, which serves as a Kind of natural Flap or Apron to cover it. Neither Sex cut the Nails of either Fingers or Toes. They are seldom either deformed or distorted.

With respect to their Bodies, they are *Quality of strong*, active, and surprisingly nimble. It is difficult for a Horseman, well-mounted, to keep Pace with a *Hottentot*: For which Reason the Dutch Governor at the *Cape* generally maintains a Troop of Horse in Readiness to pursue them on any emergent Occasion. They are good Hunters, and so expert in the Management of their *Hesperoyes* and Arrows, and the Use of their *Kirri* or *Rakkum* Sticks, that with the former they defend themselves, and will ward-off, in a surprising Manner, either Arrows or Stones.

d As to their Qualities of Mind, though some of *Mind*, Writers have represented them as abandoned to all Sorts of Vice, yet later and better Informations assure us, this Charge is exaggerated very much, if not entirely false. The chief Vice of the *Hottentots* is Laziness, and this prevailing *Their Leni- Passion* rules equally their Minds and Bodies: Reasoning with them is Working, and Working is the capital Plague of Life. Though they are daily Witnesses of the Benefits and Pleasures arising from Industry, nothing but the utmost Necessity can reduce them to work. This Love of Indolence and Liberty is their Ail; Compassion is Death to them. While Necessity obliges them to work, they are very tractable, obedient, and faithful; but when they have got enough to satisfy the present Want, they are deaf to all farther Intreaty; it is impossible to erase the natural Indolence that rules over them.

* *Kolben's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 25, 26, 27.

b The same, p. 52, 119, and 312.

1713. Kallou.
Drunkness.
 THE next *Hottentot* Vice is Drunkenness: Supply them with Brandy or strong Liquors, and Tobacco, and they will drink till they cannot stand, snore till they cannot see, and roar till they are deaf. The Women are equally guilty of this Failing; but they will bear a great deal before they get drunk: When they are so, they are extravagantly mad and foolish*. Yet fond as they are of strong Liquors, you may safely entrust them; for they will not touch a Drop without Leave: An Instance of Fidelity rarely to be met with elsewhere! Besides, their Drunkenness is not attended with that Train of Vices amongst the *Hottentots* as with us: Neither Men nor Women are guilty of Immodesty on these Occasions. The worst Effect of their Drinking is their Quarrels, which sometimes end in Blows.

*Undutiful-
 nity.*
 THE Undutifulness of the Men to their Mothers is another *Hottentot* Fault. A *Hottentot*, after the Ceremony of his being received as a Man, may, without Scandal, abuse or beat his Mother, and the worse he uses her, he receives the greater Applause. The Women seem patient and even excuse this Insolence. If you attempt to convince the old Men of the Absurdity of this Practice, the usual Answer, of *Hottentot* Custom, solves all Difficulties*.

*Expelling
 Children and
 Parents.*
 THE expelling their Children and aged Parents is another Barbarity justly chargeable on the *Hottentot* Nation; yet we see Nations of old, renowned for Learning, were guilty of these Practices*. For the first Inhumanity the *Hottentots* plead Custom only; but with regard to leaving their superannuated and useless Old to perish in some lone Hut by Famine, or the wild Beasts, they defend it as a Piece of Humanity, done to shorten the Miseries of Life.

To the Vices of the *Hottentots* we may add their Nastiness, with regard to Dress and Diet, which seems to be the Effect of their Laziness*.

*Their Ben-
 evolence.*
 IT is now proper to view the fairer Side of the *Hottentot* Character; and the principal Virtues which eminently appear to distinguish them, are their mutual Benevolence, Friendship, and Hospitality. The *Hottentots* breathe Kindness and Good-will to one another; they seek all Opportunities of obliging. Is a *Hottentot's* Assistance required by one of his Countrymen, he runs to give it: Is his Advice asked, he gives it with Sincerity: Is his Countryman in Want, he relieves him to the utmost of his Power. One of

the greatest Pleasures the *Hottentots* seem to enjoy is their Gifts*.

WITH regard to their Hospitality, it extends even to European Strangers. In travelling through the *Cape* Countries, you meet with a cheerful and open Reception in whatever Village you come to. In short, the Integrity of the *Hottentots*, their Strictness and Celerity in the Execution of Justice, and their Chastity, are equalled by few Nations. An amiable and charming Simplicity of Manners adorns all their Actions. Numbers of them have given it as a Reason for their not harkening to Christianity, that they were hindered by the Envy, Avarice, Lust, and Injustice, which they saw so prevalent amongst those who professed it*.

HOWEVER, it is not to be imagined that they are entirely free from those Vices. *Kallou* gives an Instance of the Lust, Injustice, and Violence of a *Hottentot* King, or Chief, in the Story of one *Klasi*, a wealthy *Groenman*. The Chief had carried-off his Wife by Force, who being inconsolable, he resolved to remove the Cause by taking-away his Life also: To this Effect he got him accused by the Governor's Servants of embezzling the Goods intrusted in his Hands by the *Dutch*; for whom he had long executed Commissions with so great Integrity as to excite the Envy of his Accusers. The Governor, no less corrupt than the rest, banished *Klasi* to *Ribben* Island, and confiscated his Effects, although he had effectually cleared himself from the Charge.

Captain *Tobias Gerbrantus Vander Schelling*, whom in his Distress, after Shipwreck, *Klasi* had relieved in a most bountiful Manner, was extremely grieved at this Injustice done his Benefactor; and at his Return to *Holland* represented Matters so much in his Favour to the Directors, that they dispatched Orders for recalling *Klasi*, and restoring all his Effects: But the white Wolves had devoured most of them. *Klasi* repaired contentedly with what he could get to his old Seat: But was not there long before the Chief, to make short Work of it, murdered him; and thus secured the unjust Possession of that most virtuous Creature's Wife*.

THEIR Language is most inarticulate and harsh, one Word signifying many Things; and the Pronunciation attended with such Vibrations, Collisions, and Inflections of the Tongue as make them appear a Nation of Stammerers. To express any particular Sort of Bird, they add an Epithet to the Word *Kourkour*, which signifies a

* Of this, *Kallou* gives a merry Instance, p. 327.

U. foy.

at before, p. 144, and 333.

* The same, p. 39, *U. foy.*

* *Kallou's* Voyage, p. 17, *U. foy.* and p. 384.

* The *Chinese* and *Japoneses*, at present, have the same inhuman Custom.

* The same, p. 350, 324, and 337.

* The same, p. 166, and 337.

1713.

Kathen.

Bird in general; thus they call a Water-Fowl a *Hakqua* [*Akyua*] a Horse.
Kamma Kourkeur. Hence it is very difficult, or rather almost impossible, for Strangers ever to learn their Language; and for the same Reason, though they are easily taught to understand French or Dutch, they pronounce them so ill, as scarce to be intelligible.

Some of their
Words.

THE following *Hollander's* Words are collected from a List communicated to *Ludolf*, and published by *Junker* in his Life: They are here amended, and such Syllables marked as require the Clappings of the Tongue.

KHAUNA, a Lamb.

Dukatore, a Duck.

Kgan, a Goose.

Kamma, Water and other Liquids.

Banyqua, or *Ay*, Trees.

Quaybo, an Ass.

Knum, to hear.

Nawie, the Ears.

Khekarri, a Bird called *Kurhan*.

Quaqu, a Pheasant.

Kiver, a Stick or Staff.

T'kakū, a Whale or North-caper.

Nombla, the Beard.

Horri, Beasts in general.

K'a ō, to drink.

Kuālu, a Fowling-Piece.

Durif-sā, or *Bobas*, an Ox.

Qu' Ara hē, a wild Ox.

Hēi hae, an Ox of Burden.

Quā, or *Quarqua*, the Arms.

Quawie, Butter.

Quienka, to fall.

Houtis, a Sea-Dog.

Lithaner, a Dog.

Bitqua, the Head.

Kauquequa, a Captain.

T'lamma, a Stag.

Quai, the Neck.

Kauquil, a Pigeon.

Quan, the Heart.

Anthuri, To-morrow.

Kgyer, a Buck or Doe.

Kau, a Tooth.

Tikqua, a God. (*Geunya Tikqua*, the God of Gods)

Kham-sma, the Devil.

K'mma, a House.

Khaō, a Cat.

Kuāri, Iron.

Kiā, a Son.

Kanme, a Stream.

Kuākerrey, a Hen.

Tiā, Grass.

Tiā qua [*Ouka*] a Wolf.

Kuāfire, a Word of Scandal.

Tōnkou, a dark Night.

T'kaume, Rice.

Koamqua, the Mouth.

Gbondie [*Gedi*] a Sheep.

Kōu, a Peacock.

Gua, a Boy.

Gai, a Girl.

T'auāku, Gunpowder.

Kōuāmma, a Baboon.

Kuānbou, or *thukwū*, a Star.

Kamkamma, the Earth.

Mu, an Eye.

Quāseu [*Ken*] Thunder.

Tquāssaw, or *Kvūssone*, a Tyger.

Tōuw, or *Hā-Mōuw*, a Sea-Cow.

tkad, a Valley.

Kōmma, the Belly.

Tiya, the Wind.

Their Terms in numbering.

Numerical
Terms.

Ō'kui, One.

K'ham, Two.

K'ouna, Three.

Hakka, Four.

Kō, Five.

Nann, Six.

Hōka, Seven.

Kbiff, Eight.

K'heff, Nine.

Gbiff, Ten.

As these are all their numerical Terms, when they come to ten they return to an Unit, and count to ten again; and coming a tenth Time to ten, they pronounce the Term twice, as ten ten, or ten Times ten, for a hundred. They do the same for every hundred, till they come to a tenth ten ten, or a thousand, and then pronounce the Term thrice, as ten ten ten, or ten Times ten ten, and so on.

* *Ten Rhys* also has given a List of about twenty-one Words, but incorrectly; as may appear from those included between Hooks, which are taken from him.

* *Kalben's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 31, & seq.

SECT. II.

Their Dress, Diet, Houses, and Furniture.

Dress of the Men. Krosses, or Mantles. Caps. Bracelets. Kul Kros. Stockings. Sandals. Walking-Sticks. *Dress of the Women.* Kut Kros. Guts not worn. Rings for the Feet. Head Ornaments. Powder for the Hair. Greasing and Blacking: Reason of it. *Their Diet.* Prohibited Meats. Lice eaten, and old Shoes. *Their Drink.* Their Regalia. Villages and Huts. Shape and Structure. Family and Furniture. House Dog. Removals.

Dress of the Men.

Krosses, or Mantles.

Caps.

Bracelets.

Kul Kros.

THE Dress of the Hottentots is very singular. It consists, with regard to the Men, of a Mantle that covers the Trunk of the Body, worn open, or closed, according to the Season. These Mantles (which they call *Krosses*), amongst the Wealthy are made of the Skins of the Tyger or wild Cat. Those of the common Sort are of Sheep-skins: In Winter only they turn the hairy Side inwards, in Summer out. These serve them for Quilts at Night, and for Winding-Sheets when they are interred. The Make of these *Krosses* is different: Some reach to the Knees; those of the *Astiqua* Nation fall down to the Heels: But the *Cape Hottentots* usually have them no lower than the Hips.

In hot Seasons the *Hottentots* Men go bare-headed, their usual Plaster of Soot and Fat excepted. With this they load their Hair every Day, and it gathers so much Dust and Filth, which they leave to clot without ever cleansing it, that it looks like a Crust, or Cap, of black Mortar. This, they say, keeps their Heads cool. In Winter they wear Caps, or rather Bonnets of wild Cat, or Lamb Skins, tied with two Strings, one of which goes round the Head twice, and is then fastened to the other under the Chin. These Caps they use in rainy Weather.

THE Face and Neck of the *Hottentots* are always uncovered. About the Neck hangs a greasy Bag, containing his Knife (if he is rich,) his Pipe, Tobacco, and *Dakka*, with a little Stick, burnt at both Ends, as an Amulet against Witchcraft. These Pouches are often made of the old Gloves they procure from the *Europeans*.

ON their left Arms they generally wear three Rings of Ivory, which they turn with great Art and Exactness. These serve as a Kind of defensive Armour, and for a Support to the Bag in which they hold their *Vaticum* on a Journey.

As they wear their *Krosses* generally open, you see all the Fore-Part of the Body naked down to

a the *Vorenda*. This they conceal with a *Kul Kros*, or Apron, which is a square Piece of the Skin of a wild Beast, generally a Cat, tied at Top, the Hair outward, round the Waist; the Bottom Corners flitched together, and forming a Funnel for that Member.

THE *Hottentots* have their Legs usually naked, except when they herd their Flocks: They then use a Sort of Leather Stockings to guard their Feet. If they are to pass Rivers, they wear a Sort of Sandals, cut out of the Hide of an Ox, or Elephant. These are of one Piece, fitted to the Size of the Foot, and fastened with Strings.

WHEN the *Hottentots* travel, they usually carry two Sticks of Iron or Olive-Wood, called *Kirri* and *Rakkum*. The *Kirri* is about three Foot long and an Inch thick, blunt at both Ends. This is their defensive Weapon. The *Rakkum* is pointed at one End, and is a Sort of Dart, which they throw so skillfully as seldom to miss the Mark. This they use in Hunting. In their left Hand they usually carry a small Stick of about a Foot long, to which they fasten the Tail of a wild Cat, Fox, or any bushy Tail. This they use as the *Europeans* do a Handkerchief, and for the same Purposes. When they find it dirty, they wash it in the first Water, and twisting it in the Sun, like a Mop, it presently dries.

THE *Hottentot* Women vary from the Men in their Dress, as they wear Caps in all Seasons Day and Night. These differ only in Shape, being formed so as to point spirally from the Crown of the Head; whereas those of the Men lie close like a Skull-Cap. The Women also wear two *Kut Krosses*, or Mantles, generally open: So that nothing hides their naked Skin, but a Leather Bag, which they daily carry, either abroad or at home, stuffed with their Victuals, *Dakka*, Tobacco, and Pipe. They cover their *Pudenda* with a Kind of Apron, called a *Kut Kros*, always of Sheep Skin, stripped of the Hair, and much larger than the *Kul Kros* of the Men, but tied in the same Manner. They have a smaller one, which surrounds their Posteriors.

MOST Writers have confidently affirmed of the *Hottentot* Women, that they wore the Guts of Sheep and other Animals about their Legs. This is a Mistake: The Girls, from their Infancy to about twelve Years old, wear Bulrushes tied in Rings about their Legs, from the Knee down to the Ankle. When they pass that Age, they change the Matter of these Rings, from Bulrushes to Slips of Sheep or Calf-Skin, of the Thickness of the little Finger. They singe off the Hair, and then turn the Side on which it grew inwards. Some grown Women have above an hundred of these Rings on the Leg, so nicely

* *Kalben's Voyage*, vol. i. p. 187, 188.
* In *Kalben* spelled *Kasse*.

* See also *Leake's Voyage to Slam*, vol. 2. p. 184.

1775.
Kobin.

wound about and fitted, that they look like one a continued Swathe, and by long wearing assume the Hardness of Wood. Their Rings are kept from falling down by large Wrappers of Leather or Ruffus about the Anoles; and serve both as an ornamental Distinction to the Sex, (for the *Hottentot* Ladies are regarded in Proportion to thine) and to secure their Legs from being scratched and torne in the Fields.

Heat Dress.

THE *Hottentots* are very fond of Ornaments for the Head. They first took a Fancy to Brass-Buttons and little thin Plates of the same Metal, which continue in Fashion at the Cape to this Time. Bits of Looking-Glass are in high Esteem with them; nor are Diamonds valued more highly in Europe.

EAR-RINGS, and Beads of Glass, or Brass, are the Distinctions of those of the first Rank and Quality; but all these they wear only fastened to the Hair. For these they barter their Cattle freely. They also wear the Bladders of the Beasts they have killed, blown-up, and affixed to their Hair. The Men of the better *Nammas* wear a small Plate of polished Iron, like a half Moon, on their Foreheads.

Powder.

To complete this Finery, there only remains Powder: Now the Herb *Spiraea*, dried and pulverized, furnishes them with a Gold Colour Dust, with which they powder their Heads and Faces. The Women add a new Charm (or rather Terror) to their natural Deformity, by painting their Faces in Spots, with a Kind of red Chalk, or Lead, found in the Cape Countries.

Greasy and
Rinsing.

We must not forget the most essential Article of Dress used by Men, Women, and Children; and that is the Custom of besmearing themselves with Butter, or Sheep's Fat, mixed with Soot from their boiling Pots, which they repeat as often as the Sun dries-up the Pigment. As the meaner Sort are obliged to use rank Butter, or Suet, they may be smelt at a considerable Distance: But the richer Sort are more curious, employing the freshest Butter that can be had for that Purpose. No Part of the Body escapes this Paint, and the Rich, who can afford it, daub their *Kroffer*, or Manteles of Skin with it. The Difference of Grease is the great Distinction between the Poor and the Rich: But they will not suffer the Fat of Fish to touch their Bodies; nor will they eat it, holding it in the greatest Abomination.

Reason of it.

AUTHORS have assigned different Reasons for this Custom of the *Hottentots* in greasing their Bodies: some ascribing it to Vanity, as *Tasman*; others, as *Bruce*, imputing it to a Desire of making their Limbs active and pliable: But *Kalben* supposes, that it is used to defend their Bodies from the raging Heat of the Sun, which, in

so warm a Climate, would otherwise exhaust their Strength and Vigour; and their so often repeating the Unguent seems to confirm this Opinion.

THE Diet of the *Hottentots* are the Flesh and Entrails of their Cattle, and certain wild Beasts, with Roots and Fruits of different Kinds: But, excepting at their public Feasts, or *Andersmakens*, they rarely kill any Cattle for their own Eating, unless in Cases of great Necessity; yet if any of their Cows or Sheep die naturally, they make no Scruple to eat them, and esteem them wholesome Food. If the Men are not contented with the Fruits, Roots, or Milk, which the Women take Care to provide, they go-out a-hunting, or, if they live near the Sea, a-fishing. They always hunt in large Companies. The Entrails of Cattle, or of such wild Beasts as they kill for Food, they look-upon as most exquisite Eating, after they have been boiled in Beasts Blood mingled with Milk. Sometimes they broil them. They generally, in either Case, eat them half raw. They devour their Victuals in a very reverend and serious Manner, and without much Regard to Decency. The Women always cook, except in their monthly Disorders; at which Times the Men either live on their Neighbours, or dress their own Victuals. They boil their Meat as we do; but for roasting they use two flat Stones, between which they place the Flesh.

THEY have not any set Meals, but eat as their Appetite or Humour directs, either by Night or Day. In fair Weather they eat in the open Air: In Wind or Rain in their Huts. They have traditional Laws as to abstaining from certain Meats: Swine's Flesh, and Fish without Scales are prohibited to both Sexes; Hares and Rabbits are forbidden to the Men, but not to the Women; the pure Blood of Beasts, and the Flesh of the Mole are forbidden to the Women, but not to the Men.

THE Nallinets of the *Hottentots* makes them swarm with Lice, some of which are exceeding big, and those they eat. If you ask them how they can devour such detestable Vermin, they plead the Law of Retaliation, and urge, that it is no Shame to eat those who would eat them. They are never out of Countenance when caught losing themselves, with Heaps of Vermis about them.

THE *Burepians* at the Cape have a Sort of Field Shoes, cut-out of the raw Hide of an Ox or Stag, the Hair Side outwards. These, when thrown away, the *Hottentots* gather and lay-up against a rainy Day, when their Provisions fail short, and eat them heartily; first singeing-off the Hair, then soaking them in Water, and next broiling them on the Fire.

* *Kalben's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 190, & seq.

† The same, p. 49, and 187.



*McBride's Dancing and
Music from Kallou*

Pl. 354



Hutten of Villages at Huta from Kallou

Pl. 353

1713
Kollm.

THE *Hottentots* amongst themselves never eat Salt, nor season their Victuals with any Kind of Spice: Yet they relish such high-seasoned Dishes amongst the *Eurapians* very well, and will eat heartily of them, though they often suffer great Sickness after it; and such as accustom themselves to our Diet, are not near so healthy and long-lived as the rest of their Countrymen. Amongst the *Hottentots* the Men and Women always eat separately.

Their Drink.

THE usual Drink of the *Hottentots* is Milk or Water, either mingled or separate; but the Men taste no Ewes Milk. They are great Lovers of Wine, Brandy, and Arrack, especially the last, as being the cheapest at the *Cape*: Nor are they very delicate in their Choice; for if Wine be thick or sour, they swallow it as greedily as if it were the best.

Their Re-
gale.

THEY take Things by Way of Regale and Amusement as well as other People. Both Sexes are extravagantly fond of Tobacco, their Passion for which has no Bounds: A *Hottentot* had rather lose a Tooth than a Grain of it; and the *Dutch* at the *Cape* look upon them to be better Judges of the same than the next *European*. Tobacco is always one Article of the Wages of such as hire themselves into the Service of a White. When they cannot get Tobacco, they use *Dakka*, which has the same intoxicating Quality, and sometimes they mix it with Tobacco; which Mixture they call *Buppho*. *Kanna* is a Root also in high Esteem with them, from its inebriating Quality; of which more hereafter among the Vegetables.

Villages and
Huts.

THE *Hottentots*, like the *Tartars*, dwell in moveable Villages, which they call *Kraals*. These usually consist of not fewer than twenty Huts, or Cots, built as close as possible one to another. It is esteemed a contemptible *Kraal* that contains not more than an hundred Souls. The generality have from three to four hundred Inhabitants, some five hundred. There is but one Entrance, and that very narrow, into a Village. The Huts are placed in a circular Manner, near the Banks of a River, in some commodious Situation, and resemble Ovens. The Materials of them are Sticks and Mats: The former are of the Bigness of a Rake Handle, but much longer. The Mats are made by the Women, of Bulrushes and Flags, so closely interwoven that no Rain can penetrate them. The Area of these Huts is oval, the longest Diameter about fourteen Foot, the shortest about ten. Over this last they fix a

Sick, archwise, both Ends fastened in the Ground, the Top of which is the Summit of the Hut. Three parallel Arches before form the Entrance, and five behind close the Hut. These they cover, not with Straw, as *Fogel* says, but with Mats, the Edges overlaying each other so close, that neither Wind nor Rain can molest them. The richer Sort of *Hottentots* have an additional Covering to their Huts, of Skins. The Entrance of these Hovels is about three Foot high and two broad: So that the *Hottentots* creep into them on all Four. On the Top of the Inside of this Door is fastened a Skin, so as to raise or let down, like a Window-Shutter, by which they secure themselves from the Wind; and if that continues long, they open a Door on the other Side. As there is no standing in these Huts for the Men and Women, they sit squat on their Hams, a Posture Custom has made easy to them.

Hottentot
Hut, Drawn
Shape and
Structure.

In these Huts, smaller or greater, only one Family resides at a Time, consisting of ten or twelve old or Young. In the Center of the Hut is a large Hole, about a Foot deep, which is the Fire-Place. On the Sides are small Holes for sleeping-in, each Person, Male or Female, having a separate Hole. In these they go to rest, foreading their *Kraffts*, or Mantles, under them. Their spare *Kraffts*, Bows and Arrows, are hung-up on the Sides. Two or three Pots for Cookery, a Pot or two for drinking, and some earthen Vessels for Milk and Butter, constitute the whole of their Furniture. As the Smoke in these Huts has no Vent but by the Door, there is no *Erysipela* able to stay in them when there is a Fire; and it is surprising, considering the Dimensions of these Hovels, and how combustible the Materials are, how they escape a Conflagration.

EACH Hut has usually a Dog, to guard the Family and Cattle. They do not suffer them to hang about the Fire, as some pretend, but turn them out at Night to watch the Cattle, which are placed partly within and partly without the *Kraal*. The *Hottentots* never dwell in Caves, as *Tachard* assures.

WHEN the Pasturage fails, or an Inhabitant of the *Kraal* dies, either a violent or natural Death, they constantly remove their Habitations. On removing from the Place they quit, and arriving at the Place they chuse for their new Village, they kill a Sheep, and keep an *Adonismat*, or Feast, with this Difference, that in this last Case the Women preside at the Ceremony, and the Men are excluded.

* Kollm. Voyage, vol. 1. p. 47, and 202, & Jogg.
Lange, p. 117, & Jogg.

* The same, p. 210, & Jogg.

* The

SECT. III.

Their public Rejoicings, Diversions, and Music.

Their Andermakens, or Rejoicings. Their Music, the Gongo, lesser and greater. The Pot-Drum. Their Singing and Dancing: Hunting. A pleasant Story. Dexterity in posting, and throwing a Stone. Their Manner of Hunting, Elephants, how taken. Knights of the Urine, how made. Their Fishing.

THE *Hottentots* accompany every Change of Abode and Condition, every signal Event of Life and Fortune, with Offerings and Festivities. Some of these Occasions are of a private Nature, as the depriving a Youth of one Testicle, or admitting him into the Society of the Men. Others are of a public Concern, such as their Success in War, the Destruction of wild Beasts that destroyed their Cattle, the Recovery of some principal Man from a Fit of Sickness, the removing a *Kraal* as just now mentioned, or the like.

To express these Solemnities, and indeed all other Ceremonies and Customs, they have adopted one general *Dutch Term*, *Andermakens*, that is, *To alter for the better*; and for the better performing those of a public Nature, they erect, in the Center of the open Area of their Villages, a Sort of Booth or Arbour, large enough to hold all the Men. The Materials must be all new. This Booth the Women adorn with green Boughs and Flowers. They next kill the largest Ox, Part of which they roast, and Part is boiled. This is served-up to the Men in the Booth. The Women have the Broth, and the Night is concluded with their usual Music and Dancings, of which they are extremely fond.

THEIR musical Instruments are the *Gongo*, which is common to all the Negro Nations on the Coast of *Africa*. It is of two Sorts, the greater and the lesser. It is a Bow of Iron or Olive-Wood, strung with twisted Sheep-Gut or Sinews, dried in the Sun till they acquire the Tenseness of our Fiddle-Strings. On the String, quite-up at one End of the Bow, they fix, when they play, the Barrel of a Quill slit, by putting the String into the Slit, so that it runs quite through the Barrel. This Quill, when they play, they apply to their Mouths, as we do the Jew-Harp, and the various Notes of the *Gongo* are owing to the various Modulations of the Breath.

THE great *Gongo* differs from the former only by a Coco-Shell being fixed (after cutting-

a off the upper Part) to the String by two Holes, before the String is put-on the Bow; so that when they play, they wave the Shell to and fro, nearer to or further from the Quill, as they would vary the Sound.

ANOTHER *Hottentot* Instrument, peculiar to *Pro-Dum*, the Women, is an earthen Pot, covered with a smooth-dressed Sheep-Skin, braced-on tightly, with Sinews like a Drum. On this Instrument they perform but one Tune of a few Notes.

THE vocal Music of the *Hottentots* consists in *Three Sing*, the Monosyllable *He*, and two or three wild Songs, or *Falalabunt*. The former is sung in a small Round of Notes in all their religious Ceremonies, but their Music of each Kind is in general barbarous and grating to an *European Ear*.

THEIR Manner of dancing is thus: The Men of the *Kraal* squat-down in a Circle, leaving Distances for the Women to join them. As soon as the *Gongos* are heard, the Women begin to rub with their Fingers on the Pot-Drum. All the rest sing *He, he, he*, and clap their Hands: Then several Couple present themselves to dance, but only two Couple enter the Ring at a Time, performing Face to Face. When they begin, they stand about ten Paces distant, and are about fifteen Minutes dancing before they meet. At Times they dance Back to Back, but never take Hands, and one dancing Bout lasts about an Hour. Both Parties are surprisingly active, and cut very high and clean. The Women looking down all the while on their Feet, sing *He, he, he*, and clap their Hands. When they want male Partners, they start-up and shake the Rings on their Legs, which, when they stamp in dancing, make a Noise like the Harnais of a Coach-Horse, when he shakes himself. The Dancers generally tire the Musicians, the Entertainments rarely ceasing till all the Inhabitants have had their Turns. Beside Dancings in their religious Ceremonies, they have them on other Occasions, as when a *Samjan*, or Peace, is made between two Nations at War: When the Inhabitants of a Village have killed a wild Beast, or escaped some threatening Calamity, or received some signal Benefit.

HUNTING is another favourite Diversion of the *Hottentots*, in which they show an amazing Dexterity, both in managing their Weapons, and in the Swiftness of their Course. It is indeed a Wonder they do not oftener make a bad Use of the Nimbleness of their Feet, though Instances of this Kind have happened, one of which it may not be undervaluing to relate. A Dutch Sailor landing at the Cape, gave a Roll of Tobacco, about twenty Pound Weight, to a *Hottentot* to carry after him to the Town. Being gotten at home

* Kellin's Voyage, vol. 1, p. 125.

† The same, p. 273, & seq.

‡ The same, p. 181.

1713.
Kollers.

Distance from Company, the *Hottentot* asked the Sailor in Dutch, Could he run well? Run, says the Sailor, yes, very well. Come let's see, replied the *Hottentot*, and taking to his Heels with the Tobacco, was out of Sight in a Minute. The Sailor, instead of following, stood confounded at such miraculous Speed, and never saw either his Porter or Goods any more.

Hunting.

THEIR Dexterity in discharging their Arrows, or throwing the *Affogoy*, and *Rakkom-Stick*, is almost incredible. In the Use of these Weapons they show such a Quickness of Sight, and Certainty of Hand, as no European can imitate. In the Chase of a Deer, wild Goat, or Hare, if a *Hottentot* get within thirty or forty Yards, the *Rakkom-Stick* seldom misfires. In throwing a Stone they are such Marksmen, that they will, at an hundred Paces Distance, hit a Mark not bigger than an Half-peony: Yet his unerring Hand is not all the Wonder, for he never stands ready to eye the Mark as we do, but is in continual Motion and Grimace; so that you would think him playing the Fool, instead of taking Aim, till away flies the Stone directly to the Mark, as if carried by some invisible Hand. The *Hottentot* sees your Surprise, is delighted with it, and will repeat the Experiment as often as you please. They are equally expert in shooting the Arrow, or darting the *Affogoy*.

Manner of
Hunting.

WHEN a *Hottentot* goes by himself a-hunting, or only with two or three in Company, he does it solely to get some Game for his Family. On these Occasions the *Rakkom-Stick* does all the Execution they need. The great hunting Matches of the *Hottentots* are when all the Men of a Village go-out together either to chase some wild Beast who has molested their Cattle, or for their Diversion. If it is an Elephant, Rhinoceros, Elk, or wild Ass, they encircle and attack him with their *Affogoy*, one plying him behind while he turns to another; and thus they keep him continually turning, not knowing whom to shoot-upon, till he falls covered over with Wounds. A Lion, Tiger, or Leopard, they assail in like Manner, avoiding the furious Beast by their surprizing Agility. He leaps towards one so quick, and seemingly with so sure a Paw, that you shudder for the Fellow, expecting to see him in an Instant torn to Pieces: But you are mistaken, he leaps out of the Danger in the Twinkling of an Eye, and the Beast spends all his Rage upon the Ground. Meantime the Weapons fall thick behind: He turns and leaps at another, and another, but in vain. He roars, foams, and tumbles with Rage. On one side they avoid the Paw of the Beast with incredible Dexterity, on the other they relieve one another with incredible Speed

and Resolution. It is a Spectacle to be seen nowhere in the World but among the *Hottentots*, and not to be viewed without the highest Admiration. The Beast, if not quickly slain, finding there is no dealing with so nimble an Enemy, takes to his Heels. The *Hottentots* let him go freely, but follow at a Distance, knowing, that as the Arrows are poisoned, he will soon drop, and leave them his Skin.

Hottentots
Diver-Jon.

THEY have another Way of engaging the Elephant with less Trouble and Danger. As these Creatures always go to the Water in Troops, and in a Line, one behind another, by the Bulk of their Feet they make a Path, which is very visible. In this Road the *Hottentots*, without Spade or Shovel, make a Hole from six to eight Foot deep, and about four Foot Diameter, fixing a pointed Stake in the Middle: Then they cover the Cavity with small Boughs, Leaves, Grass, and Earth, so artfully, as to deceive any Eye. Into this Hole the Elephant falling with his fore Feet, (for it is not big enough to contain his Body) is pierced with the Stake in his Neck or Breast, and held securely till the *Hottentots*, who lie on the Watch, come-up and dispatch him. His Carcass is then carried to the Village, and makes a noble Feast. They often take the Rhinoceros and Elk in the same Manner.

Elephant,
see Note.

THE *Hottentots* have an honourable Order amongst them, consisting of such as have singly encountered and slain a Lion, Tiger, Leopard, Elephant, Rhinoceros, or Elk. The Institution of an Hero of this Kind is as follows: On his Return from the Exploit to the Village, he retires to his own Hut, where he has not far long, till an old Man, deputed by the Men of the *Kraal*, comes to invite him to receive the Honours due to his Merit. The Champion rises and follows his Conductor to the Middle of the Village, where all the Men assembled wait his Coming: He there squats-down on a Mat spread for him, while all the Men squat in a Circle round him. The old Deputy then marches-up to him and pusses upon him from Head to Foot, pronouncing certain Words.

If the Deputy is the Hero's Friend, he lays them out him under a Deluge of Water. The more Piss the more Honour. The Champion himself having before-hand made Furrows with his long Nails in the Fat or Grease, with which he was besmeared, rains the Piss into it as it falls upon his Face and Body with the greatest Eagerness: Hence the Author titles it the Order of the Urine, for the *Hottentots* have no Name for it. This done, the Deputy lights a Pipe of Tobacco, or *Dakka*, which he circulates through the Company till nothing but Ashes remain in the Pipe. These the

Deputy shakes on the new Knight, who is congratulated on the high Honour he has received, and the Service he has done his Country. After this he takes three Days Rest, during which Time his Wife is forbidden to come near him. On the Evening of the third Day he kills a Sheep, receives his Wife again, and rejoices with his Friends and Neighbours: wearing ever after the Bladder of the Beast he has killed, fastened to Hair, as a Mark of Honour.

THREE *Africans* express greater Joy at the Destruction of a Tyger, than that of any other wild Beast.

Fishing.

THE *Hottentots*, in the Art of Fishing, much excel the *Guin Europeans*. They are very expert both at the Angle and Net, or at the Spear, which they use in Creeks and Rivers. They also take Fish dexterously by groping or tickling. As they eat no Fish without Scales, they sell the rest to the *Eurapians*. They are incomparable Swimmers, though their Manner is not a little surprizing, as it is peculiar to themselves; for they swim with their Necks above the Water, and their Hands extended out of it, so that they look as if they were walking upon firm Ground. In tugging Seals, running Mountains high, they dance thus forwards on the Waves, rising and falling like so many Pieces of Cork. Their Fishermen pack-up the Fish they take in their *Kraals*, or Leather Bags, and swim thus with the Burden on their Heads.

HUNTING and Fishing are free throughout the *Hottentot* Nations to all the Inhabitants.

SECT. IV.

Marriages and Economy of the Hottentots.

Hottentot Courtship. Marriage Ceremony and Feast. Their Smoking. Childrens Portions. Adultery, how punished. Widows at Marriage take a Joint. Child-bearing. Female Children exposed or buried alive. Naming the Child, and Parents Purifying. Flattening the Nose. Boys arrival of one Testicle: The Operation. Their after Treatment: Reason for this Treatment. Their Admission into the Society of Men. They abuse their Mothers. Domestic Economy. The Wife's Province.

Hottentots Geography.

ALL Overtures of Marriage amongst the *Hottentots* are made by the Father, or nearest Relation of the Man, to the Father, or nextest Relation of the Woman. When the Youth is about eighteen, (the usual Time allotted for Marriage) the Father and his Son waiting on the Woman's Friends, the Lover employs himself in preparing and presenting the Company with *Dukka*, or Tobacco. They all smoke, and

nothing is talked of the Matter till their Heads are gaily with the Fume: Then the Father opens the Business to the Woman's Father, and demands her for his Son. The other presently leaves the Room to consult his Wife, and quickly returns with a positive Answer; which is seldom in the Negative, but in case of a prior Engagement. If the young Woman does not like the Match which her Parents have consented to, she has only one Chance to avoid it, which is to lie down with her Lover on the Ground, and play with him all Night at pinching, tickling, and whipping. If she conquers, she gets fairly rid of him; but if he subdues her, which is generally the Event, she must marry him.

Marriage Ceremony.

AFTER this, the young Fellow being made a Man, goes attended by all his Relations and Friends, Male and Female, driving before him one or more Oxen, according to their Wealth, to the Habitation of the Bride, if the *Kraal* be over so distant, where they are received with great Joy. The Oxen killed, they bestow themselves plentifully with the Fat, and then powder themselves thick all over with *Butha*; the Women painting their Cheeks, Forehead and Chin with red Chalk-Stone. This done, they perform the Wedding-Ceremony in the following Manner: The Men squat themselves in a Circle, in the Center of which the Bridegroom is seated in the same Posture. At some little Distance the Women do the same round the Bride: Then the Priest, or Master of religious Ceremonies, who belongs to the Village of the Birds, enters the Mens Circle, and passes a little on him, who, with his long Nails, makes Furrows in the Graze, that the Urine may soak the farther. He then does the same Kindness to the Bride, returning from the one to the other till his whole Stock is exhausted, and pronouncing all the Time short Blessings to the following Purpose: *May you live happily together; May you have a Son before the Year's End; May he be a good Huntsman, or Warrior.*

THIS over, they join in preparing the Wedding Feast. The Oxen being cut in many Pieces, they dress them all at once, Part boiled, and Part roasted. Their Method of boiling is like the *Eurapians*, but their roasting quite another Thing. They make a brisk Fire on a large flat Stone like a Hearth, till it is thoroughly hot: Then wiping off the Ashes with a Handful of Grass, lay on the Meat, which they cover with such another Stone: Next making a Fire round the Meat, and upon the Stone, it is soon roasted.

THE Men and Women are placed in separate Circles, the Bridegroom sitting for this Time among the latter, but not talking of their Victuals, having a separate Mess for himself. The

Meat is served up in Pots that shine with Grease: a Some have Knives, others tear the Flesh with their Fingers; all eating with astonishing Rapacity. The Lappets of their *Krafs* serve as Plates: Their Spoons are Mother of Pearl, and other Sea-Shells, without Handles. Their Drink is Water and Milk, strong Liquors scarce ever being used at these Entertainments.

AFTER Dinner they smoke *Dabbe*, or Tobacco, each Company having one Pipe. The Person who fills it takes two or three Whiffs, then gives it to another, and so it goes round. Some swallow the Smoke, and as they grow intoxicated, the Noise and Prate increases. Thus they spend most of the Night, and towards Morning the Bridegroom flies to the Arms of his Bride; the rest go to sleep. Thus they feast for two or three Days while their Provisions last. When these are spent, the Wedding is over. It is odd, that though the *Hottentots* are great Lovers of Music and Dancing, they allow neither at their Marriages. They admit Polygamy, but even among the Rich the Number of Wives seldom exceeds three. They suffer neither Marriages nor Fornication between first and second Cousins, from a traditional Law, which if any break, they are upon Conviction, without regard to Wealth or Distinction, condemned to Death.

A FATHER seldom gives a Son for his Portion above a Couple of Cows, and as many Sheep. As for the Daughters they have rarely any Portion, except a Cow and two Sheep; which yet must be returned to the Father or her Family, if she dies before she has a Child. They have no Regard in their Marriages to Fortune, but to Wit, Beauty, or Agreeableness; so that often the Daughter of a poor Man is married to the Captain of a *Kraal*, or Village, or the Chief of a Nation.

ADULTERY amongst the *Hottentots* is always punished with Death: But they allow Divorce, if the Husband can show such Causes for it as appear satisfactory to the Men of his Village. In this Case the Man may marry again, but a Woman divorced is not allowed to do so while her Husband lives. One Particular is, that if a Widow marry, she cuts-off a Joint of her Finger, beginning with the little one, for every Husband after the first. But every bride does not, as *Veget* affirms, cut-off a Joint of her little Finger, and present it to the Bridegroom; nor does he tie a Gut of an Ox or Sheep about his Neck. *Barrow* more ridiculously pretends, the Mutilation is owing to the Mother's biting-off the Child's Joint; but the Men never want the Joint, nor any Women, but remarried Widows.

In every *Kraal* there is a Midwife chosen by the Women for her Skill, who holds her Office for Life; but her Fee is only a Present now and then. When her Patient's Pains come-on, she lays her on a *Kraf* spread on the Ground. The Husband leaves the House till she is delivered, under a Forefeiture of a Sheep to the *Kraal*: If her Labour be slow, they boil Milk and Tobacco, and straining it, give the Liquor, when cool, to the Woman, who immediately brings forth.

As soon as the Child is born, they rub it all gently over with fresh Cow-dung, which, when dried, they rub-off, and then wash it with the expressed Juice of the Stalks of the *Hottentot* Fig. When this Juice is dried, they rub over the Body with Sheep's Fat, or melted Butter; and, when it has well soaked, they powder him with *Bukhó*, which sticks on like a Crust; and thus the Besmearing begins.

If the Child is still-born, and a Male, the Village removes: If there be Male-Twins, the Parents make extraordinary Rejoicings. If the Twins are Female, they generally destroy the ugliest; or if Male and Female, the latter, by exposing it on the Bough of a Tree, or burying it alive, with the Consent of the whole *Kraal*. Some of these deserted Infants have been found and educated by the Cape Whites: But whenever they arrived at Years of Maturity, they renounced the European Manners, Apparel, and Religion, to conform to those of their own People.

THE *Kraf*, or Mantle, on which the lying-in Woman has been delivered, is presently interred, for fear their Conjurers should come at it to work some Enchantment on the Mother or Child. They tie the Navel-String with a Sheep's Sinew, which hangs till it rots-off.

AFTER the Child has been cleansed in the Manner described, the Name is given it by the Mother, which is usually that of some favourite Beast, as *Hakqua*, a Horse; *Gammen*, Lion; *Ghamle*, Sheep; or the like. The Man is prohibited to come near the Woman either after Labour, or during her Menstrue, till she grown well, otherwise he is regarded as unclean, and obliged to purify himself by offering a fat Ox. The Woman purifies herself when her Term is expired, by besmearing her Body with Cow-dung. This being rubbed-off when dry, the besmearer herself with Fat, and powdering herself with *Bukhó*, waits to receive her Husband; who, before he enters, does the same: Then squatting down, he chats, says kind Things, and smokes till he raves and drops asleep.

* *Kelso's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 150, 25, 499. Also p. 118, 127, and 309.
199.

Not unlike the Law enjoined the Jews, *Leviticus* xii.

* The same, p. 150, and

1723.
Kalmien.

THE Rejoicings on the Birth of the first Child are much greater than those attending any other Birth, and the eldest Son has, in a Manner, an absolute Authority over all his Brothers and Sisters*.

Flattening
the Noses.

It has been generally believed in Europe, that the *Hottentots* are born with flat Noses; but this is a Mistake: Most of them are born with Noses like ours; but as the *Hottentots* look on a high Nose as a great Deformity, their Women take Care, as soon as they are delivered, to break down the Bridge with their Thumbs†.

Ben gelled.

It is a Custom likewise among them, when the Males are eight or ten Years of Age, to deprive them of one Testicle; but in Cases where the Parents are poor, this Ceremony is deferred till they are able to answer the Expence. The Patient being daubed over with the Fat of a Sheep newly killed, lies on his Back on the Ground, at full Length, his Hands tied together, as are his Feet. His Friends lie upon him, so as to keep him motionless. The Operator then, with a common Case, or Table-Knife, laying hold of his left Testicle, makes an Orifice in the *Scrotum* about an Inch and an half long: Then squeezing out the Testicle, he ties up the Vessels in a Trice, and thrusting in a little Ball of the same Size, composed of Sheep's Fat, and several Herbs, pulverized, stitches up the Wound. His Needle is the Bone of a small Bird like an Aul, and his Thread a Slip of Sheep's Sinew. He performs all this with a Dexterity that would surprize our Anatomists; and the Operation always succeeds, without any ill Consequences.

After Treat-
ment.

THE Wound being sewed-up, and his Bands loosed, the Operator anoints him again, roughly enough, with the warm Fat of the Sheep killed for his *Andersmaaken*; turning the Boy now on his Back, then on his Belly, who drops and sweats with Pain like a roasting Pig. After this, he pillsies all over him, and rubs the Liquor in, as on other Occasions. The Ceremony now at an End, the Patient, who is left by himself, trembling and sprawling as in an Agony, crawls to a little Hut raised for that Purpose; where, in two or three Days, he recovers and runs about as briskly as ever.

THE young *Hottentots* bear this Operation with surprizing Patience and Resolution; but none of the young Fry, who have not yet been under the Knife, are permitted to see it. The Assistants repair to the Parents House and feast on the Flesh of the slaughtered Sheep. They send the Women the Broth, but not a Moriel to the Infirmary. The rest of the Day and Night is spent in Dancing and Singing. If the Parents

are rich, the Operator has a Lamb or Calf for his Trouble.

MOST Authors write, that this is done to make them run the swifter, and many of the *Hottentots* themselves assign the same Reason: But Kolber was informed by some of the most intelligent Natives, whom he closely questioned on this Point, that it has been a Law among them from Time immemorial, That no Man should be allowed to have vernal Knowledge of a Woman till deprived of his left Testicle. Should any marry without this necessary Mutilation, both Parties would lie at the Mercy of the Rulers, and the Woman, perhaps, be torn to Pieces by her own Sex; among whom it is a prevailing Opinion, that a Man with two Testicles constantly begets Twins: Wherefore they call upon the young Man's Friends to produce Evidence of the Excision, Modesty forbidding them to examine it themselves‡.

THE *Hottentot* Youths are confined to the Tuition of their Mothers, whom they follow on all Occasions, till the Age of eighteen; at which Time they are received into the Society of the Men, with whom till then they dare not converse, not even with their own Fathers. The Ceremony is performed thus: All the Inhabitants being assembled, and the Men seated in a Circle, the Candidate is ordered to squat-down without upon his Hams, or Heels, so as not to touch the Ground by at least three Inches. Then the oldest Man among them rises, and having obtained Consent for his Admission, steps up to the Youth, and acquainting him therewith, lets him know, that he must thence-forward forsake his Mother and the Company of the Women, with every childish Amusement, and learn to behave as a Man both in his Words and Actions.

THEN the Youth, being previously bedaubed with Fat and Soot, squats-down to receive the smocking Inundation of Urine, which the Operator discharges all over him with the usual Formality: The old Men then congratulate him on the Honour done him, adding the following Benedictions, *! Humma; Good Luck attend thee: Di-da dno; Live to be old: Zianghio; Increase and multiply: ! Kumi; May thy Beard grow firm.*

THIS *Andersmaaken*, or Ceremony, like all others among the *Hottentots*, ends in a Feast; but the young Fellow is not admitted to join the rest till towards the End of it.

A *Hottentot* thus discharged from the Tuition of his Mother, may insult, and even cudge her whenever he pleases, by which they receive Applause instead of Reproof. Nay, it is usual for

* Kallens's *Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 141, & seq.
‡ Jey.

† The same, p. 111.

‡ The same, p. 114.

1713.
Kollens.

them to go and abuse their Mothers immediately after their Reception into the Order of Men, to shew their Contempt for the Conversation of Females; and those already admitted call such as remain under the Tuition of their Mothers, after the Age of eighteen, *Kuifirs*, or *Milk-Sops*. This is the most dreadful Reproach that can befall a *Hottentot*; inasmuch, that a Man branded with it must undergo a new Admission into their Society.

Dissip.
Domest.

A *Hottentot* never has a Hut till he marries: b The new Couple then set about erecting one, and procuring the Furniture, which must be all new. When he is once settled, he abandons himself to the Arms of Laziness, leaving all domestic Affairs to the Wife. Sometimes, indeed, when called, he assists at a hunting or fishing Match, and now and then goes to look after his Cattle, especially if he has a Son to leave him to; or in Case he has any Handicraft, he teaches it to him. This is the Extent of a *Hottentot's* c private Life.

The Wife's
Fervency.

THE Wife, besides the Education of the Children, is doomed to all the Drudgery; to seek Roots, bring in Fuel, milk the Cows, and dress the Victuals. For this she has the Reward of a separate Bed; for the married Couple never lie together, nor seem to intermeddle with the Affairs of each other; seldom discourse together, or discover any Signs of matrimonial Tenderness. Their Secrecy in Point of Love is impervious. d They are equally modest with regard to all those Actions which we term indecent.

Modesty.

SECT. V.

The Diseases, Medicines, and Funerals of the Hottentots.

Diseases of the Hottentots. Their Physic and Surgery. Manner of Cupping. Blood-letting. Curing poisoned Wounds. Dislocations. The Head-Ach. Amputations. A foul Stomach. Distinctions. Passing in Recovery. Physicians. Diseases of the Cape Europeans. Funerals of the Hottentots: Carrying the Corps: The Company regaled with Urine. The Superstitious exposted to Death.

Diseases of
the Hottentots.

THE Diseases incidental to the *Hottentots* are very few, and rarely visit those who keep to the Diet and Drink of the Country. Such live to a great Age, Dupper says, to an hundred

a and ten, an hundred and twenty, and an hundred and thirty. *Kilken* met with one at the Cape not much less than an hundred, who looked like a Man of forty, and, by his own Report, was never once sick or out of Order in his Life. But those who drink the strong imported Liquors shorten their Days, and catch Diseases before unknown. The very Victuals, dressed and seasoned after the European Manner, are most pernicious to them.

Surgery.
Physic.

As to their Physic and Surgery, the *Hottentots* b join those two Professions together; yet their Skill in both is far from being contemptible. Their Doctors often perform surprising Cures, and such as our ablest Physicians would scarce attempt. They are generally well skilled in the Botany of their Country, and have pretty good Notions of Anatomy. Bleeding, Cupping, Amputation, or setting of Dislocations, they perform with great Dexterity, considering their Want of Instruments; having only a Horn, a Knife, and the sharp-pointed Bird's Bone before-mentioned.

IN Colics and Pains of the Stomach their usual Remedy is Cupping. This they perform c in the following Manner: The Cup is an Ox's Horn, the Brims of which are very smooth. The Patient lying on his Back on the Ground, the Doctor applies his Mouth to the Part affected and sucks the Skin; after which he claps on the Horn, letting it lie till he judges the Part beneath insensible: He then pulls it off, and after making two or three Incisions, about half an Inch long, claps it on again, letting it remain till it fills with Blood, when it falls off, which is usually in about two Hours. The Patient is then left to rest. If the Pain removes to another Part, they rub it with hot Fat. If that does no Good, they proceed to a fresh Cupping; and if that fail, they have Recourse to internal Remedies, such as Infusions, or Powder of Herbs or Roots.

THEIR Manner of Bleeding is this: The d Operator is provided with a common Knife and a Strap. Binding the last tightly over the Vein, he cuts it, and having taken as much Blood away as he judges requisite, he closes the Orifice with sweet Myrtles-Fat, and ties upon it the Leaf of some salutary Herb. This they use in Plethoras, and Indispositions of that Kind.

THE Cure of Wounds made by a poisoned e Arrow is performed thus: They rub the Venom of Snakes, with their own Spittle, between two

^a Kollens's Voyage, vol. 1. p. 120, & seq. handle the callow Plap, hanging over their Pudenda, & seq.

^b The same, p. 48, & seq.

^c Yet, p. 119, the Author says, the Women will let me see a little Tobacco.

^d Kollens, as before, p. 169.

^e See before, p. 338 d.

Stomach; and having mixed these well together, search upon the Pit of the Stomach till the Blood comes. Part of this Mixture they apply to the Scar, the rest they take inwardly. When they judge the Poison expelled, they cleanse the Wound, and dress it with the Leaves of *Dalba*, *Bukhi*, or other Herbs. By this Means, in a Month's Time, they generally effect a Cure; but the least Delay, or Neglect in the Case, is dangerous. This the Author had from a *Hottentot* who had been cured by the same Remedy.

Application. With regard to treating fractured Limbs the *Hottentots* are quite ignorant, being seldom subject to such Accidents. They could remember no Instance of the Kind among them; but Dislocations they relieve by rubbing the Joint violently with Fat, and then moving the Limb briskly up and down, pressing on the Joint till it be reduced to its proper Place. It may be believed, what they say, that this must give a most violent Torment.

Blow. In violent Head-Achs they shave the Head with a Knife, well-sharpened, the Fat in the Hair serving for Soap: Yet they never shave all off, but make Furrows, leaving as much Hair on as they take off. They shave also amongst the the poorer Sort by Way of Mourning.

Amputation. The *Hottentots* Amputations are only for the Women, who, as hath been already observed, are obliged to lose a Joint of the Finger on marrying a new Husband. In doing this, they tie up the Head of the Joint, next below that which is to be cut-off, tightly with a dry Sinew. They then with a common-Knife make the Amputation. To stop the Bleeding, they apply the Juice of the Leaves of Myrrh, and wrap-up the Finger in the Leaves of sweet Herbs.

Food. For a foul Stomach the *Hottentots* usually take the Juice of Aloe in a little warm Broth, repeating the Dose till it works the desired Effect; which, as it is a good Cathartic, and at the same Time an excellent Stomachic, it seldom fails to perform.

The Powders and Infusions they use for other inward Ailments are few and simple, such as wild Sage, wild Figs, and Fig-Leaves, *Bathé*, Garlic, Fenel, and a few other Herbs: so that their *Materia Medica* lies in a very narrow Compass.

Divination. The *Hottentots* use a Piece of Divination with regard to finding-out whether a sick Person shall recover or not. For this End they take a Sheep and flea him alive with great Care, that the Creature lose no Blood in the Operation. If, when the Skin is off, and the Sheep untied, he

runs and runs, they look on it as a favourable Omen: But if it lie still, they give the Patient no more Physic, but leave Nature to itself.

When a *Hottentot* recovers from any dangerous Sickness, he performs an *Akder/maken*, by killing an Ox or Sheep, (according to his Circumstances) and treating his Neighbours. If it be a Man who recovers, the Men devour the Meat, and fend the Women the Broth: If a Woman, the Women have the Meat, and the Broth is left to the Men.

The Physician here is the third Person in the *Physicians* State. In large *Kraals* there are two. These are Men chosen out of the wisest Inhabitants, to watch over the public Health. For this they have neither Fee nor Reward, the Honour of the Employment being judged a sufficient Recompence for the Trouble. They keep their Nostrums very secret, and are highly respected by the rest, who put entire Confidence in them. As the *Hottentots* are generally a healthy People, so these Doctors are not over-burdened with their Business.

In every *Kraal* there are old Women who pretend to mighty Skill in Medicine. These are greatly hated by the Doctors; and, like those of the same Stamp in *Europe*, only regarded by their own Sex.

The *Cape Europeans* are subject to few Diseases of *Europeans* which shows the salubrious Nature of the Climate. The Women suffer very little in Child-bearing, but are very much subject to sore Breasts in suckling, which is an epidemical Complaint at the *Cape*. The Small-Pox and Measles are usually favourably there. New Corners are subject to the Bloody-Flux, but they are easily cured by proper Remedies. A general Disorder, to which the *Cape Europeans* are subject, is sore Eyes: This Disease is usually worst in Summer, owing, no doubt, to the hot South-East Wind, and the strong Refractions of the Sun from the Mountains. Colds and sore Throats are also frequent at the *Cape*, but seldom attended with any bad Consequences. No *Cape European* was ever afflicted with the Stone; which is the more surprising, as they live well and drink freely of the rich Wines that Soil produces.

When a *Hottentot* falls sick, he is presently *Hottentots* surrounded by his Friends, who, on these Occasions, make hideous Exclamations. If he dies, these grow so violent, that they may be heard for Miles. Whatever obscure Notion they may have of the Immortality of the Soul, they never pray for the Patient, nor put him in Mind of Eternity. As soon as the Breath is expired, the Corpse

* Kolben's Voyage, vol. 1. p. 305, & seq.
 † The same, p. 334.

‡ The same, p. 311, & seq.

§ The same, p. 87.

1713. is wrapt-up Neck and Heels together (like a human *Fetus*) in his *Arms*, or Mantle, so that no Part of it is seen. They then look-out a Place to bury it, while the whole Village assembles to attend the Body to the Grave, which is usually some Cleft in a Rock, or some Hole made by a wild Beast; for the *Hottentots* seldom dig a Grave when they can find either of these near. They usually inter their Deceased six Hours after Death, unless the Person die in the Evening, and the Night be dark, in which Case they defer it till next Day. With regard to this, they resemble the *Jews*, and it may be presumed many are buried alive.

When the Time for carrying the Corpse to the Grave is come, the Men and Women of the *Kraal* assemble before the Door of the Hut, squatted-down in two separate Circles, clapping their Hands, and crying *Be, be, be*, (the *Hottentot* Term for Father.) They never bring-out the Corpse by the Door of the Hut, but loosen the Mats on the Side next the Body, and bring it out that Way. The Bearers then take it in their Arms; and the Circles of Men and Women rising, follow it without Order, only that each Sex goes separately. All the Time they make such wild Howlings, and ridiculous Grimaces, as would almost kill an *European* with Laughter. When the Body is interred, they fill-up the Grave, or Cavity, with the Mold of Ant-Hills; and cram it down with Pieces of Wood or Stones, the better to secure it from wild Beasts.

The Company then return to the Hut of the Deceased, where the Men and Women, as before, squat-down in separate Circles, making a frightful

Noise or Yelling: After which, the Signal being given for Silence, two old Men, Friends or Relations of the Deceased, step into each Circle, and piss upon the Company all round, till their Urine is exhausted. This done, they go into the Hut of the Deceased, and taking each an Handful of Ashes from the Fire-Place, throw them by little and little on each Circle, which the Parties rub-over them with great Eagerness. If a *Hottentot* die rich, this Ceremony is renewed every Day for four, seven, or eight Days together.

THE Lamentations for the Dead being over, a Sheep is usually killed by way of *Anderingaken*, the Cawl of which, well powdered with *Bull's*, is put about the Heir's Neck. This he is obliged to wear till it rots off. This is the rich *Hottentot's* Mourning. The poorer Sort shave their Heads.

THE *Hottentots* have an extraordinary and cruel Kind of Funeral, with regard to those of either Sex, who are so superannuated as to be quite useless in Society. So long as a Man or Woman can but crawl to fetch home an Herb, Root, or Stick, they are tenderly used by their Family: But when they can do no more, they are set in a solitary Hut at some Distance from the *Kraal* or Village, with a small Stock of Provisions left in their Reach; and so abandoned for ever to perish by Age, Hunger, or wild Beasts. If a *Hottentot* be ever so rich, he cannot escape this Fate, if he outlives his Strength and Abilities. It is to no Purpose to argue to a *Hottentot* the Barbarity of this Custom; they defend it obstinately as a meritorious Action, a Deed of Piety and Compassion to shorten the Miseries of Life, when it becomes unsupportable by Age.

C H A P. IV.

The Occupations, Commerce, Religion, and Government of the Hottentots.

S E C T. I.

Their Occupations, Trades, and Commerce.

1. Management of their Cattle.

Way to acquire Cattle: How tended, increased, and killed. Way of milking and making Butter. Cattle, how secured at Night. Their War-Oxen. Carriage-Oxen. Cattle-Doctors. Loss of Cattle the greatest Evil. Sacrifice for their Steep. Custom of driving them through the Fire.

AS all the Wealth of the *Hottentots* consists in Cattle, it may be proper, in the first Place, to shew the Methods by which they acquire their Riches, and how they manage them.

AN old *Hottentot*, who has lost his Substance, or a young one, whose Friends cannot or will not provide for him, hires or lets himself out either to one of his own rich Countrymen, or to an *European*; but the latter Service is always more eligible, as it is attended with greater Advantages. With them they always bargain for a daily Allowance of Tobacco and *Dakba*, as Part of their Wages, which is constantly in Cattle:

* Kalken's Voyage, vol. I. p. 308, and 314, & 377.

And these must be the best: For they will not take a barren Cow or Sheep, and are very exact in judging of such at first Sight. A *Hottentot* having thus acquired Cattle, with his Savings in the two other Kinds, purchases more, and sets-up for himself amongst his Countrymen.

THE Cattle of a *Kraal*, or Village, feed together in common; the great in one Herd, the small in another: So that a *Hottentot*, who is but the Proprietor of a single Sheep, has the Privilege of turning it into the Flock, where it is as well tended, as if it belonged to the richest Man of the Village. They have no particular Herdsmen or Shepherds, but take these Offices by Turns, three or four or more together, as the Case may require. They drive them to Pasture between six and seven in the Morning, and back to the Village between five and eight in the Evening. Morning and Evening the Women milk the Cows.

THEY let the Bulls run with the Cows, and the Rams with the Ewes, all the Year, by which Means their Stock increases greatly, the Ewes yielding constantly two Lambs in the Year. The *Cape European*, who practise a contrary Method, allege, that this diminishes and weakens the Breed; but the *Hottentots* maintain the contrary. They geld their Bulls and Rams thus: They lay the Bull on his Back, and with four strong Ropes fastened to his Feet, extend him at full Length, so that he cannot move. The Operator then, with a Leather Thong, ties the Testicles up in the Bag as hard as he can, stopping all Communication with the superior Vessels; after which they let him run at Liberty till his Testicles rot-off. They treat the Rams in the same Manner when six Months old, but before they let them go, bruise their Testicles to mash with a Stone.

THESE Women milk their Cows and Sheep after our Manner. If a Cow be refractory to yield her Milk, they bring her Calf to suck a little; but in case it be dead, they either deceive her, by covering another Calf with its Skin; or else tying her hind Legs together, blow into her Nostrils. This Office is performed by the Men as well as the Women. Cows Milk is drank by both Sexes, but that of Ewes only by the Women, and those too of the poorer Sort.

THEIR Butter is made thus: For a Churn they use the Skin of a wild Beast made into a Sack, with the hairy Side inwards. This being half full of Milk, they tie-up close; and then two Persons holding it at each End, shake it briskly till the Butter comes. This they put into Pots for smothering themselves, or Sale to the *Europeans*, for they eat none: But as they never strain their Milk,

the *Hottentot* Butter is so nasty as to be loathsome; yet the *Cape Europeans* buy it, and after cleaning it, sell it with great Profit to the Ships that touch there, as if of their own making, or else give it to their Slaves or Servants. The Butter-Milk that remains, the *Hottentots* give to their Calves or Lambs, or sometimes drink it themselves, foul as it is.

As the *Hottentot* Countries abound with Beasts of Prey, they are obliged to secure their Cattle at Night, which they do in this Manner: In the Area of the *Kraal*, or Village, they lodge the Calves and all the small Cattle. Round the Outside of the Huts they range the great Cattle, with their Heads close to the Huts, and two and two together by the Feet, to prevent their Straggling. In this Position there is no Need of a Centry to guard them, for if any wild Beast approach by Night, the Cattle give the Alarm by a general Lowing and Disorder. In every Village there is an empty Hut, where the Lambs are kept Night and Day till they are reared, so as to run with their Dams to Pasture.

THE *Hottentots* have a Sort of Oxen called *Bakkeleys*, or Fighting Oxen, (from *Bakkeley*, *War*) which they use in their Wars, as the *Asiatic Nations* use Elephants, to break and trample down the Enemy. These Oxen are of great Service to them in managing their Herds, and defending them both against the Attacks of the *Bushies*, or Robbers, and wild Beasts. On a Sign given, they will fetch-in Stragglers, and bring the Herds within Compais. Every *Kraal* has at least half a Dozen of them. They know all the Inhabitants of their own Village, to whom they pay the same Respect as a Dog, and will never hurt them; but if a Stranger appear without the Company of a *Hottentot* belonging to the Village, the *Bakkeleyer* presently makes at him, and will demolish him, unless whistled-off, or frightened by firing a Gun. They train them by tying a young Ox and an old *Bakkeleyer* together by the Horns, using also Blows to make them tractable. What these Animals perform is amazing, and does Honour to the *Hottentot* Genius.

THEY have also Carriage Oxen, which they inure early to this Use, by Means of a Stick thrust through his upper Lip between the Nostrils, with an Hook at the End to prevent its falling through. By this, if he is refractory, they fix his Nose to the Ground till he comes to a better Temper; and as it is an exquisite Torture, he is soon broken to his Duty. It is surprising how readily they understand and obey the Words of Command. No Dog can be more tractable. The Fear of the terrible Stick makes them all At-

attention and Diligence. These carry all their Burdens, and are much more numerous than the *Bakelagers*.

In every *Kraal* they have Cattle Doctors, whose chief Care it is to attend the Herds. Indeed, these are subject to few of the Diseases incident to those in *Europe*, the Rot, Mortalities, and the Cough not being known among them; yet they are often visited with a fatal Distemper, occasioned by the heavy Rains, from which they have no Shelter to defend them. In all Diseases they let them Blood, and give them wild Garlic. For Stoppage of Urine they administer Water, wherein the same Root has been infused. When any of their Cattle recover, they show great Joy: If they die, they make themselves some Amends, by feasting on the Carcass, which every Inhabitant of the Village claims a Share in. They look on these as finer Meat than such as are killed.

As the Wealth of the *Hottentots* consists solely in their Cattle, so no Misfortunes afflict them so much as the Decrease or Loss of these, especially when devoured by wild Beasts. It is next to impossible to describe the Rage of the Men, or the Grief of the Women, on such an Occasion, and how eagerly they pursue the Enemy, who, if taken, suffers the most cruel Death. If the *Hottentots* find their Herds increase too fast, beyond the Number they can tend or find Pasture for, they have several Methods of disposing of the Excess; either by selling them to the Governor at the *Cape*, or privately to the *Dutch*, or to their Neighbour *Hottentots* for Tobacco, or such Necessaries as they want: But then they always take Care to let the Reduction fall on the Oxen and Rame, and never willingly part with their Cows or Ewes but at a good Price.

WHEN the Sheep or Cattle of a *Kraal*, or Village, are seized with the *Megrim*, it is their Custom to make a Kind of propitiatory Offerings, on which they feast for three Days. If these Sacrifices prove successful, and the Distemper abates, they conclude that *Gonyia*, or God, is pleased, and make extraordinary Rejoicings: If otherwise, they renew them, appointing a more experienced Person to preside. If this fail, they wisely impute the Distemper to the Nature of the Air or Soil, and remove their Habitation.

ANOTHER remarkable *Superstition*, or Custom of the *Hottentots*, is their driving the Sheep, at certain Times, through the Fire. On the Day appointed for this Ceremony, the Women set all the Milk before the Men; who having drank it all up, some go to bring the Sheep together,

others to make the Fire of Chips and dry Twigs, thinly spread into a long Square. The Sheep being come, the Fire is covered with green Twigs to raise a Smoke, and the Men range themselves in a close Line on each Side, forming a Lane for the Flocks to pass through. If the foremost boggle at the Fire and Smoke, some *Hottentots* are placed in the Front, who drag them through, and on this the rest generally follow in a Heap, though sometimes they attack, and breaking through the Ranks, escape. This the *Hottentots* look upon as a very ill Omen: But if the Sheep pass readily through, there is no End of their Exclamations and Rejoicings. The *Hottentots* practise this from Time to Time to preserve their Sheep from the wild Dogs, which they dread more than Tygers, and will not be fond of attacking them while the Scent of the Smoke remains on their Fleeces.

2. Their handicraft Trades.

The Butchers, skillful Dissolvers. The Skinner. The Taylor. Ivory Workers. Mat-Makers. The Rope-Maker. The Potter. The Smith.

THE Handicrafts, which the *Hottentots* exercise among themselves, prove them to be a contriving, dexterous People, if their reigning Indolence did not spoil all.

SCARCELY any *European* Butcher handles a Knife with such Skill as a *Hottentot*. Their Method of killing a Sheep seems uncommon. Having tied his Feet, they hold him down by them stretched on his Back, one before, another behind, while a third with a Knife open up his Belly, so that all the Entrails appear. The Butcher then with one Hand gently tears the Guts from the Carcase and nobler Parts, and with the other flurs the Blood to keep it from congealing. In doing this he carefully avoids breaking any of the Blood-Vessels about the Heart, so that the Sheep is at least a Quarter of an Hour a-dying, while the Spectator has a full View of the Heart in all its Motions, which seems to be the Reason for this cruel Practice: For the Guts being washed clean, Part are laid on the Fire, and after eaten, before the Animal be dead, the Remainder are minced, and put a fewing in the Blood, which they scoop-out with Shells, or their Hands, into Pots.

WHEN the Body is cleared of the Blood, the two Assistants join to skin it, and laying the Carcase on the Skin, proceed to separate the Parts from each other. In a little Time you see the Flesh, Bones, Membranes, Muscles, Veins, Ar-

* Kallus's Voyage, vol. 1. p. 176, 177.

b The same, p. 128, 129.

c Both the Physi-

cian of the *Arabs* and the Women, were dabble in Medicine, were always present, poring and handling the Parts, when Kallus saw any killed.

1713.

Kilmer.

teries, &c. all in separate Parcels. Thus they do with such surprizing Dexterity, that they might rather be called Anatomists than Butchers. All Cattle are killed much the same Way. They reject no Part of any Beast but the Excrement, Bones, Hoofs, and Horns. The Bones they boil to extract the Marrow, and then throw them to the Dogs. With the Marrow they anoint their Bodies. Of a Sheep's Skin they make a *Kraz*, or Rings, for the Legs of Women; and of an Ox's Hide, long Straps to cover their Huts. If they have no Use for them this Way, they lay them up for Food.

The Hottentots.

THE *Hottentots* dress their Skins and Hides in this Manner. They take the Sheep-Skin soaking fresh, and rub it with Fat to render it tough and smooth, as well as to secure the Hair or Wool from falling-off. But if it be for the Use of their own Countrymen, after rubbing it with Fat, they rub it with fresh Cow-Dung, leaving it in the Sun to dry. This Operation is renewed till it becomes very black, and smells furiously of the Dung, which makes it fit for Wear. With regard to a Cow or Ox Hide, the *Hottentot* Skinner rubs Wood-Ashes plentifully on the Hair, after which he sprinkles it with Water, and rolling it up, leaves it a Day or two to dry in the Sun. This at the second Time never fails to bring-off all the Hair: Afterwards he greases it heartily with Fat, which is the Sum of *Hottentot* Tanning.

The Taylor.

THE *Hottentot* Skinner is usually a Taylor too, and not unexpert at the Business. The Bird's Bone before-mentioned is his Needle, and his Thread the split Sinews that run along the Spine of Beasts, dried in the Sun. With these he cuts-out and makes a *Kraz*, or Mantle, in less Time, and, perhaps, better than any *European* Taylor could. It is also his Business to cut the large Hides into Straps or Thongs, about two Inches broad, which the *Hottentots* use to tie-up the Materials of their Huts and their Furniture in removing their *Kraals*, as well as on other Occasions. This he performs with surprizing Speed and Exactness only by the Eye, the Hide being full-stretched by Pegs on the Ground.

Iron Workers.

THE next *Hottentot* Artificer, is the Worker in Ivory, who makes the Arm-Rings worn for Ornament; and though all the Tool he has is but Knife, which makes the Work tedious, yet they are as perfectly round, smooth, and bright, as if they had been wrought by the nicest Turners.

Men-Makers.

THEIR Mats are made by the Women, with Flags, Reeds and Bulrushes dried in the Sun. They wave them very artfully with the Fingers,

and so closely, that no Wind, Light or Rain can penetrate them; but they are not lasting.

Hottentot Handicraft.

The Hottentot Maker.

THEIR Ropes are made of the same Materials with their Mats, and are as strong and durable as those of Hemp. They rarely exceed four Yards long, though they sometimes make them longer for Sale to the *Cape Europeans*. To this Article may belong the Strings made by the *Hottentots* for their Bows and musical Instruments. These latter are strung with dried Sinews and Guts of Sheep, their Bows with twisted Guts only. Two Persons having hold of a Gut, one at each End, twist it till it arrives at the Roundness and Solidity of an *European* Fiddle-String. They then lay it, extended on two Pegs, in the Sun: When it is dry, they grease it with Sheep Fat, and letting it lie some Time longer, take it off the Pegs for Use.

The Potter.

ALL the *Hottentots* are Potters, every Family making its own Earthen-Ware. These they make of the Mold of Ant-Hills only. After cleansing it thoroughly from Sand and Gravel, they knead it well, mixing with it the Ant-Eggs they find scattered up and down. This they raise on a Stone like a Pye, in the Form of a Roman Urn, (which is the Shape all *Hottentot* Pots are of) smoothing it carefully, Inside and Outside, with the Hand. This done, they leave it two Days in the Sun to dry, and then separate it, by drawing a dried Sinew, like a Saw, between the Bottom of the Vessel and the Stone. Next they bake it with a quick Fire in a Hole made in the Ground. By this Means it acquires both a surprizing Firmness, and lasting black-jet Colour, which the *Hottentots* ascribe to some cementing Quality of the Ant-Eggs.

The Smith.

THE *Hottentot* Smith is the more surprizing, as he melts the Iron he uses from the Ore, which is Plenty in all their Countries, without any other Implement than Stones. He makes a large Hole in a raised Ground for melting the Ore, and about a Foot and an half lower, on the Descent, a lesser Hole to receive the Metal, which passes through a Channel made from one to the other. Before they put the Iron Stones in the greater Hole, they make a Fire round the Mouth of it, sufficient to heat it thoroughly. They then put in the Stones, and make a Fire over them, which they keep-up with fresh Fuel till the Iron is melted. As soon as it is cold, they take it out and break it in Pieces with Stones. These Pieces they heat again, and hammering with Stones, shape into Weapons with great Labour and Ingenuity.

THE *Hottentots* sometimes melt Copper-Ore in the same Manner, but use it little, except for

* See p. 358. c.

* Kilmer's Voyages, vol. 1. p. 228, 25. figg.

* The same, p. 241.

* Trimbach.

1713.
Kolben.

Trinkets to adorn themselves. These they polish a and shape in a surprising Manner.

3. Their Commerce.

Trade among themselves, and with the Europeans.
Travelling just.

Trade among
themselves,

THE Commerce of the *Hottentots* consists wholly in Barter, having no Money current among them, or any Notion of its Usefulness or Value. Their Wealth consists in Cattle only. Indeed, sometimes they bring Elephants Teeth or Ostrich Eggs to exchange at the *Cape*, but in small Quantities; as also the Skins of wild Beasts: But the main Basis of their Traffic is their Cattle. The poorer *Hottentots* employ themselves in making Armour, which they sell to the Rich for Cattle; or else hire themselves out to the *Dutch*, or their Countrymen, for the same Wages. Those who purchase Goods of the *Euro-*

And with the
Europeans,

peans with Cattle, make large Returns, by selling the same Goods for Cattle among their own People. Tobacco and Kanna-Root are valuable Commodities with them, and bring any Price. WITH the *Europeans* the *Hottentots* exchange Cattle, some Elephants Teeth, Ostriches Eggs, the Skins of wild Beasts, particularly wild Horses or Asses, for Wine, Brandy, Tobacco, Dabba, Coral, Beads, Tobacco-Pipes, small Looking-Glasses, Knives, Iron, small Bits of polished Brass and Copper, and the Kanna-Root. They have no Notion of Silks or other Goods for Use or Ornament. Authors differ greatly in the Prices at which the *Hottentots* sell their Cattle. The Rates must rise or fall according to their Scarcity or Plenty, and the Demand, more or less, that is for them: But if *Kolben*, who resided long in the Country, may be depended on, they have not much raised their Markets; for he avers, that for a Pound of Tobacco he always purchased an Ox, a large Sheep for half a Pound; and a fat Lamb for a Quarter. However, no Consideration will prevail on a *Hottentot* to sell an *European* a Set of their Arms or Weapons. Forty or fifty Years ago they brought Drovers of Cattle to Market at the *Cape*, but at present they bring none thither, but as Presents to the Governor.

Travelling
among them,

IN Company with a *Hottentot* it is very safe travelling through all the *Cape*-Countries, where you are sure to meet with the greatest Hospitality and Kindness in every Village. They are wonderfully faithful in every thing committed to their Care. Indeed, for the Security of Travellers,

the *Dutch* oblige them to bring sufficient Vouchers, (in case any *European* dies amongst them) that he died a natural Death. There are indeed, in the *Cape*-Countries, a Sort of Banditti, or Outlaws, called *Bushis*, who live by Depredations; but they are held by all the civilized *Hottentots* in the greatest Abhorrence, and, like Beasts of Prey, extirpated wherever they can be found.

Hottentot
Beligion.

S E C T. II.

The Religion and Government of the *Hottentots*.

1. Their Religion.

They believe in a supreme God. Adore the Moon. Beetle God. Reverence Men departed. Believe in a Devil, Witchcraft, and Immortality of the Soul. Irrevocably obstinate in their Opinions. Not to be reformed in their Customs. Their Sari, or Priest.

IT is a very difficult Task to get out of the *Hottentots* what Notions they have of God or Religion. They are very shy of entering into Discourse on that Subject, and their Answers are evasive, as they generally are in Matters relating to their Customs. Hence Authors have doubted, whether they have any Religion at all: But *Mr. Kolben* assures us, that they firmly believe there is a God, the Author of all Things. This supreme Power they call *Ganyra*, or *Ganyra Tekqua*, that is, *The God of all Gods*; and say, "He is a good Man who does no-body any Hurt, and from whom none need be apprehensive of any, and that he lives far beyond the Moon." But it does not appear that they have any Institution of Worship directly regarding this supreme Deity. They excuse themselves, when pressed on this Article, by a Tradition, that their first Parents so grievously offended this great God, that he cursed them and their Posterity with Hardness of Heart, so that they know little about him, and have less Inclination to serve him.

Beligion is
supreme God.

THE *Hottentots* adore the Moon. This they do by assembling at Night in the Fields, killing Cattle, and offering Milk and Flesh. This they do constantly at the Full and Change. They welcome her, and then invoke her for favourable Weather, to grant them Fodder for their Cattle, and Plenty of Milk, regarding her as the inferior *Ganyra*, or Representative of the great God. The Worship they pay her consists in disordered

Adore the
Moon.* *Kolben's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 257. & 599.

* The same, p. 261. & 599. Also p. 272.

* *Smeat*,

Tachard and Vogel affirm the same.

* Tachard and Vogel affirm this, but *Beving*, though the Writer who has written best of the *Hottentots*, denies it, in which, says *Kolben*, he was deceived by them: For they are very apt to impose on Strangers either by Way of Sarcasm, or to conceal their Customs.

1713.
Kilken.

Faces and Postures, shouting, screaming, singing, jumping, stamping, dancing, prostrating themselves on the Ground, and repeating an unintelligible Jargon of Words. This continues all Night by Fire, often till pretty far in the Day. Their Rests are short, at which Times they settle themselves in a squat Posture, with their Heads between their Hands, and their Elbows on their Knees.

Bosch-God.

THE *Hottentots* also regard as a good Deity, an Insect of the Beetle Kind peculiar to these Countries. It is about the Size of a Child's little Finger, the Back green, the Belly speckled white and red, with two Wings and two Horns. Wherever they meet this Animal, they pay it the highest Honour and Veneration. If it visits a *Kraal*, they assemble about in Troops, as if a Divinity had descended among them: They kill a Sheep or two as a Thank-Offering, and esteem it as an Omen of the greatest Happiness and Prosperity. They believe its Appearance expiates all their Guilt. If the Insect lights upon a *Hottentot*, the Person is looked on as a Saint, be it Man or Woman, and ever after treated with uncommon Respect. The *Kraal* kills the fattest Ox for a Thank-Offering, and the Caul, powdered with *Bekku* and twilled like a Rope, is put, Collar-wise, about his Neck, and there must remain till it rots-off.

Bosch-God.
Kilken.

THE *Hottentots* pay a Sort of religious Veneration to their Saints, or Men of Renown, deceased; not, indeed, by Statues, Tombs, or Inscriptions, but by consecrating Woods, Mountains, Fields, or Rivers to their Memory. Whenever they pass by these Places, they always stop, and show their Regard by Silence, and sometimes by dancing and clapping their Hands.

Bosch-God.
Kilken.

THESE People have also an evil Deity, called *Tengissa*, whom they represent as a little, crabbed, ill-natured, malicious Captain, a great Enemy to the *Hottentots*, and the Author of all the Mischiefs that befall them in this World, beyond which he hath no Power. They therefore worship and offer Sacrifices to him, in order to soften him and bring him to good Temper. Some of them declared to *Boving*, that they had often seen him in the Shape of a deformed, hairy, frightful Monster, dressed in White, with Head, and Feet like a Horse's: But *Kilken* never met with any who pretended they saw him.

Bosch-God.
Kilken.

ALL sudden Pain, all Sickness or cross Accidents, or whatever artificial Performance is beyond their Comprehension, the *Hottentots* ascribe to Witchcraft: So that Charms and Amulets are in high Esteem among them.

THEY seem to have no Notion of a future State, either good or bad, after Death: much less, of a Resurrection: Yet that they believe the Immortality of the Soul seems evident from these Particulars: *First*, That they offer Prayers and Praises to the good *Hottentots* departed. *Secondly*, They are apprehensive of the Return of departed Spirits to molest them; for which Reason, on the Death of any Person, they remove their Village. *Thirdly*, They believe it is in the Power of Wizards and Witches to lay these Spirits: But they seem to think these departed Souls remain in or about the Places where the Body was inhabited by them; for of a Heaven or Hell, Rewards or Punishments, they have not the least Notion.

Hottentot Religion.
Immortality of the Soul.

THIS appears to be the whole that can be collected as to the *Hottentot* Religion, to which they are invincibly attached. If you attempt to reason with them, they hear you sullenly, or quit you abruptly. They avoid, if possible, entering on any religious Topic. Some of them have dissembled a Belief of Christianity; but when the Motive was removed, they always returned to their native Idolatry: In spite of all the Endeavours of the *Dutch* Missioners at the *Cape*, they have not been able to make a single Convert.

Invincibly attached.

M. VANDER STEL, Governor of the *Cape*, took a *Hottentot* Child, and had him educated in the Christian Religion, and in the Manners and Customs of the *Europeans*. He was clothed richly in the *Dutch* Fashion, learned several Languages, and discovered a very promising Genius. The Governor seeing him to be qualified, sent him to the *Indies* with a Commissary General, where he was employed in the Company's Affairs till the Commissary died, when he returned to the *Cape*. A few Days after, at a Visitation among his *Hottentot* Relations, he stripped off his *European* Dress, and equipped himself in a Sheep's Skin. In this wretched Figure, he bundled-up his Cloaths, and presenting them to the Governor, said, *Be pleased, Sir, to take Notice, that I for ever renounce this Apparel: I do likewise for ever renounce the Christian Religion. It is my Design to live and die in the Religion, Manners, and Customs of my Ancestors. I only beg you will grant me (as I am sure you will) the Hunger and Cold I wear, which I will keep for your Sake*. He waited no Reply, but flew away, and was never after seen at the *Cape*. In short, the *Hottentots* seem born with a natural Antipathy to all Customs and every Religion but their own.

He is fit among his Relations.

* *Kilken's* Voyage, vol. 1. p. 91. & seq.* *Zeyher* was imposed on with regard to this Point, by a *Hottentot* introduced for the Purpose.* So did all the *European* Nations before the Reformation.* *Kilken*,

as before, p. 124, and p. 124. & seq.

1713.

WHENEVER they are to pass a rapid River, they first sprinkle some of the Water on their Bodies, and then daub a little of the Mud on their Foreheads with great Sentioufness, and muttering to themselves: But if you ask the Reason, the usual Reply is, *Do not you see the Current is strong and dangerous?* This Superstition seems, with *Kellom*, to have been founded in Religion.

The Sati,
or Priest.

THE Priest, or Master of religious Ceremonies, is called *Sati*, that is, *Master*. His Office, which is elective, is not to read Prayers, or instruct the People in religious Matters, which are Points the *Hottentots* have no Notion of; his sole Business is to preside in their Offerings, to direct their religious Ceremonies, to perform their Marriages and Funerals, and to geld their Males. He is, on these Accounts, considered as the fourth or last Officer in the *Kraal*; but has for his Trouble, no Revenue, except being invited to their Feasts, or sometimes presented with a Calf or Lamb.

2. Their Government, Civil and Military Affairs.

The Konquer, or Chief of each Nation, Captain of a *Kraal*, or Village. National Assemblies, or Courts. Justice in civil and criminal Matters: Method of Prosecuting. Law of Inheritance. Their Wars: Without Discipline: The Warriors few: Not lasting: Different Methods of Fighting. Their Arms: Bows and Arrows: The Hallagaye, or Half-Pike. Kurri and Rakum Sticks. Mock Fights for keeping-up Discipline.

The Kon-
quer, or
Chief.

THE *Hottentots* are not without Government, or a Regulation of Justice. Every Nation has a Chief, whom they call *Konquer*; whose Office it is to command them in War, to negotiate Peace, and preside in their public Assemblies, the Captains sitting in a Circle round him. These Chiefs were formerly distinguished by the Magnificence of their Dress, but at present by a Brass Crown; the *Dutch* having, since their Establishment here, complimented those of the Nations in Alliance with them, with that Ornament, which they wear on the above-mentioned Occasion. This Office is hereditary, but far from being regal; for, when his public Business is over, he has no Authority but to govern his own *Kraal*, or Village. He has no Allowance to support this Dignity, nor any Distinction but the Respect paid to his Person. He is obliged, on his Admission to this Honour, to engage he

will not attempt any Thing against the Prerogative of the Captains of the *Kraals*, or the Privileges of the People. This done, a Feast is made of a fat Ox and a Couple of Sheep, and he is installed with great Solemnity. The Wives attend, but have no share but the Bread: Next Day the Chief's Spouse makes a Feast for the Women, at which, in their Turn, the Men attend, and must be content with the same Regale.

THE next Officer of Note among the *Hottentots* is the Captain of a *Kraal*, or Village, whose Office it is to keep the Peace and administer Justice in his own District. This Place is hereditary; but he is, on assuming it, obliged to promise not to change the ancient Laws or Customs of the *Kraal*. He commands the Troops of his own Village in Time of War, under the *Konquer*, or Chief, of his Nation, and is installed with much the same Ceremonies as he. Assisted by the Men of his *Kraal*, he hears and decides all Disputes of Right and Property, and tries and punishes for Theft, Murder, Adultery, and other Crimes committed in his Jurisdiction: But State Criminals are tried by the *Konquer*, assisted by the Captains of all the Villages. These Officers are distinguished, not only by their fine Tyger, or wild Cat Skins, but also by a Cane with a Brass Head, presented them by the *Dutch*; and may be considered as the *Hottentot* Nobility, by whom, and the Chiefs assembled, each Nation is governed: But they act without either Fee or Perquisite. In these Assemblies all Matters are decided by a Majority of Voices, collected by the Chief, who always presides. The *Hottentots* seldom go-out to the Chase, or undertake any Expedition of Importance without consulting these Captains; yet sometimes Disorders arise, which they are not able to quell. Thus the People will go together by the Ears, and fight it out in spite of him. On these Occasions, to save his Authority, he seems neither to see nor hear what passes, unless it comes to Murder or a general Commotion; for then they appear, and the People, conscious of having carried Matters too far, generally return to their Duty at once.

THE Physician is the third Person of Note in the *Kraal*, and the Priest the last: Of both these an Account has been already given in their respective Places.

SUCH is the political Economy of the *Hottentots*: By which it appears, they are not so barbarous as they have been represented; nor is their Administration of Justice to be treated as wholly ridiculous. Every Village has a Court of Justice for civil and criminal Affairs, composed of the Captain and all the Men of the *Kraal*,

* Kellom's Voyage, vol. 2. p. 106, & 107.

† The same, p. 28.

‡ The same, p. 84, & 85.

who

1743.
Hottentots.

who meet for this Purpose in the open Field, sitting in a Circle. Justice among the *Hottentots* never suffers, as in *Europe*, either by Corruption, or, which is as bad, Delay. They have no Lawyers, thank Heaven! The Plaintiff and Defendant plead their own Cause. The Court hear them, and, by a Majority of Votes, decree Possession or Damages, in Case of Assault and Battery, or other Trespass, without Appeal or Obstacle.

And criminal
Matters.

In criminal Matters, as Murders, Adulteries, and Robberies, the Guilty finds no Protection or Favour either from his Wealth or Rank, the Captain himself faring no better than the meanest Inhabitant. As soon as a Person is suspected to have committed any of those Crimes, Notice is given to all the Men of his *Kraal*, who considering themselves as so many Officers of Justice, look-out flurp to seize him, in case he knows the Evidence is plain against him, he commonly flies to the *Bushes*, or *Banditti*; for he would be looked-on as a Spy, should he retreat to any other Village, and, on Enquiry, be given-up. When a Criminal is seized, he is put in Hold till the rest can assemble to try him, which they do perhaps the same Day. His Place is the Center of the Circle, as best both for hearing and being heard. The Charge being pronounced by the Prosecutor, his Witnesses are called. Then the Prisoner makes his Defence, the Court patiently listening whilst either he or his Witnesses hath one Word to say in his Behalf. If he appears unjustly accused, the Court assigns him Damages out of his Prosecutor's Cattle; but if he be adjudged guilty, Sentence is pronounced, and executed without allowing him a Moment's Reprieve. He is put to Death on the very Spot where he stood at his Trial. The Captain of the *Kraal*, who performs on this Occasion the Office of Executioner, flying on him, as in a Rage, lays him sprawling at his Feet with his *Korri-Stick*, which commonly shatters his Skull. The rest quickly dispatch him, and as soon bury the Body. In this Case, his Family suffers no Reflection. His Crime is effaced by his Punishment, and his Memory suffers no Reproach. On the contrary, his Funeral is performed with as much Respect as that of the most virtuous amongst them. If we compare this Method of administering Justice with ours in *Europe*, the Reader will easily see on whose Side the Advantage lies.

When a Difference happens between two Villages of the same Nation, it is referred to the Judgment of a national Court, who, when they

form their Resolutions, execute them with as much Steadiness and Vigour as a Roman Senate. The *Europeans* may boast of their Learning, Arts, and Politeness; but where among them can they show so wise, so happy a Government as that of the *Hottentots*; owing entirely to this, that it has for its Basis the most perfect Liberty of the People?

With regard to Inheritance, all the Father's Estate and Wealth descends to the eldest Son, or failing him, to the next Hair Male. They are never divided, or descend to a Female: Even a Legacy bequeathed to a *Hottentot* Woman, without the Consent of the next Heir, is invalid. If a Father would provide for his younger Sons, he must do it by giving them their Portion of Cattle while he is in Health, otherwise, they must lie at the Mercy of the eldest, both as to Fortune and Liberty: But if once the elder gives the younger Brother his Freedom, he can never resume it again. The Power of the eldest Son extends equally over the Sisters: They cannot leave him or marry without his Consent, and he gives a Fortune or not, as he pleases. He is only obliged to take Care of the Wife, or Wives of his Father deceased, till they remarry or die: But if he himself marries in his Father's Lifetime, he stands no better Chance for a Fortune in Hand than his Brothers.

The *Hottentots* are by no Means insensible of the Wrongs and Injuries, especially such as are national. On the least Invasion of its Rights a *Hottentot* Nation takes Fire. All fly to Arms and march to meet the common Enemy: But a *Hottentot* War is no Burden on the People. They know nothing of a military Chest, erecting Magazines, or raising Money by Taxes for War, to last so many Campaigns. On the contrary, one Battle generally decides the Contest, but then it is usually obstinately fought on both Sides. They are Strangers to Discipline.

They know nothing of Rank and File, Front, Flank, or Rear, but fight in great Confusion; yet they stand not so close, but that each has full Room to whirl his *Assagaye*, and skip from Side to Side while taking Aim. They begin the Attack with a dreadful Scream; and when one has discharged his Dart or Arrow, he retreats a little for another behind to take his Place, till he is ready again to relieve him. The Victory depends mostly on the Experience of the Chief in discovering the weakest Part of the Enemy, in order to break them with his choicest Troops, or penetrate with the *Bukldoyers*, or War Oxen,

* *Popel and Toward* stigmatize the Captain of a *Kraal* on this Account, though, among the *Trois*, the Judge was often the Executioner. * *Kalke's Voyages*, vol. 1. p. 296, & 397. * The same, p. 137, and 392, & 393.

1713, which in that Case make prodigious Havock, and a
 Robber, generally put them to the Rout.

THE Motives of War amongst the *Hottentot*
 Nations are generally one of these three: Steal-
 ing their Cattle, running away with their Wives,
 or trespassing on their Pastures. This last is the
 most frequent Cause of Quarrel: For though
 none of the *Hottentot* Countries have any settled
 Limits, yet they have a general Notion of the
 Extent of their Territory; and although those
 of one Nation were not to drive their Cattle on
 their Neighbours Grounds, as they sometimes do,
 yet by firing the Grass in dry Seasons, they may
 spoil their Pasturage. They seldom steal the Wives
 or Cattle of one another, but with Design to
 provoke a War: But on all these Occasions the
 injured Nation, before proceeding to Violence,
 sends Deputies to remonstrate the Wrongs, and
 to demand Redress. If this is delayed, she takes
 up Arms and immediately makes Reprisals as the
 can. If she finds herself overmatched, she ge-
 nerally applies to the Dutch Governor at the
Cape for his Mediation, whose armed Detach-
 ment quickly brings both Parties to an Accom-
 modation, on such Terms as the commanding
 Officer proposes, which are always much to the
 Advantage of the losing Side. The Expence
 which the Dutch are at on these Occasions, they
 amply make-up in the Cattle they purchase of
 the Nation, whose Quarrel they mediate, at an
 under Value. If a *Hottentot* Nation, at a great
 Distance from the *Cape*, grows rich and popu-
 lous, and consequently overbearing, the neigh-
 bouring Nations commonly enter into an Alli-
 ance, offensive and defensive, like that of the
Sossagays and *Olliquays*, with the People of the
 lesser *Namagays*, against those of the greater,
 who are very strong and imperious; or that of
 the *Duquays* and *Damaquays* against the *Gaurays*.
 And in all such Alliances they are very faithful
 and exact. The Ally is always at early in the
 Field as the Principal, fights with as much Ani-
 mosity as if the Cause was her own, and never
 lays down Arms till Satisfaction be obtained.

SOME of the *Hottentot* Nations have also their
 Singularities in War. The *Khouantours* and *Hya-
 kams*, for Instance, never cease fighting, though
 they have lost ten to one, to long as their Chief
 plays on a Sort of Pipe, or Flagelet. When it
 ceases, they retire; if he plays again, they renew
 the Attack. The lesser *Namagays* and their Al-
 lies above-mentioned maintain the Battle vigo-
 rously till they find they have lost more Men
 than the Enemy, when they presently retreat.
 Other *Hottentot* Nations, as the *Duquays*, *Da-
 maquays*, and *Gaurays*, fight while they see their

General is safe; but if he disappears or be killed, *Hottentot*
 they take to Flight. *Courtesy returns.*

THEY never touch or plunder the Enemy's
 slain, leaving their Arms, and every Thing else,
 to the Disposal of their own Party; but the Pri-
 soners they immediately kill. Defectors and Spies
 are also put to Death without Mercy, and are
 held in great Contempt even by the Party they
 go-over to: For, when the War is at an End,
 they scarce allow them Bread; and in all Trea-
 ties of Peace, Part of them, on both Sides, are
 generally given-up, who are immediately put to
 Death.

THEIR Arms, besides their *Kirri* and *Rak-
 kum*-Sticks already-mentioned, are the *Hassagays*, *Hottentot*
 or *Affagays*, and Arrows. The Bow is *Arrows*
 made of Iron, or Olive-Wood, very neat and
 handy. The Strings are large Sinews or Guts of
 Beasts, secured at each End by a wooden or Iron
 Hook. The Arrow consists of a small tapering
 Stick, or Piece of Cane, a Foot and half long,
 and a Semicircle of Iron, the Bigness of half a
 Sixpence, bearded by a small Angle, within and
 without, on each Point, which are always poi-
 soned. To the Middle of this Semicircle joins a
 small Iron Barrel, about two Inches in Length,
 which receives the small End of the Stick. The
 Quiver is a long narrow Bag, made of Ox, Elk,
 or Elephant-Skin, which they sling-over their
 Shoulder by a Strap fastened to both Ends. The
 Bow is hung on a Hook fixed at the upper-End.
 They will hit a Mark no bigger than a Silver-
 Penny, at a considerable Distance, with an Ar-
 row, seldom failing, if it be not windy, though
 skipping from Side to Side while taking Aim,
 which they are not long about.

THEY do the same in throwing the *Hassagays*, *Hottentot*
 which is their best Weapon. They likewise brain *Pike*
 dish and whirl it in such a Manner, that they
 seem not to take Aim, yet the Mark it flies wide
 of must be a very narrow one. The *Hassagays*
 is a Sort of Half-Pike. The Shaft is of the
 Length and Thickness of a Rake Handle. At the
 thickest End there is fixed a little thin Plate of
 Iron, tapering to a Point and very sharp on the
 Edges, which is always kept bright, and, when
 used against an Enemy, or wild Beast, poi-
 soned.

THE *Hottentots* use their *Kirri* and *Rakkum*-*Kirri* and
 Sticks also as martial Weapons. The *Rakkum*-*Rakkum*
 Sticks they throw at the Enemy, as they do at *Sticks*
 a Beast in the Chase, if within thirty or forty Yards
 of the Creature, which falls-down generally pierced
 quite through the Body. The *Kirri*-Sticks are
 for warding-off the Arrows, *Hassagays*, *Rakkum*-
 Sticks, and Stones, which they use when their

* *Kalher's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 284. *See before*.

* See before, p. 351.

1713. Weapons are spent. This they perform with a great Dexterity. Guard of his *Kurr-Stick*, with which he intercepts it, rarely failing (at least in a mock-Fight) to ward-off a Pebble.

In Times of Peace, they frequently exercise themselves in mock-Fights. On these Occasions their Weapons are *Kurr-Sticks*, *Rakkum-Sticks*, and Stones; for Arrows they never use, and but seldom the *Hassagays*. The Engagement begins with a hideous Yell, and a Shower of *Rakkum-Sticks* from both Sides. These being spent, they go to it with Stones, Heaps of which are placed for the Purpose. As soon as an *Hattentat* perceives himself in Danger from an *Hassagay*, *Rakkum-Stick*, or Stone, he stands still under the young to military Discipline.

CHAP. V.

The NATURAL HISTORY of the Countries towards the Cape of Good Hope.

SECT. I.

Of the Air, Water, and Minerals.

1. The Seasons and Weather at the Cape.

Seasons and Air. The Weather. The Table Cloud: Its Qualities and Effects: How accounted for.

The Seasons and Air.

THE Europeans at the Cape consider the Year as divided into two Seasons, which they term *Monsoon*, the wet *Monsoon*, or Winter, and the dry *Monsoon*, or Summer: The first begins, with our Spring, in *March*, the latter in *September*, when our Summer ends. In this good Season the South-East Winds generally reign; which, though they clear the Air and make the Climate serene, yet render it difficult for Ships, outward-bound from *Europe*, to enter *Table-Bay*. In the bad Season the Cape is much subject to Fogs; and the North-West Winds and Rain make the Inhabitants stay much at home: But there are frequent Intermittions and many Sun-shiny Days till *June* and *July*, (when it rains almost continually) and from thence till Summer. The Weather in Winter is cold, raw, and very unpleasant, but never more rigorous than Autumn in *Germany*. Water never freezes to abate the Thickness of a Half-Crown, and as soon as the Sun appears the Ice vanishes. The Cape is very rarely visited by Thunder and Lightning, except a little near the

c Turn of the Seasons, in *September* and *March*, without doing any Hurt.

NB: are the South-East Winds, which blow impetuously during the Summer Season and raise Clouds of Dust, without Inconveniency. These Winds sometimes rage for eight Days, and even a Month together, during which the Cape Air is always serene, and the Sky free of Clouds; excepting the Wind Cloud on the *Table* and *Devil Hills*, which is the Harbinger and Sign of a Storm. On the contrary, during the North-West Winds, which distinguish their Winter Season, the Air at the Cape is thick, and loaded with heavy Clouds big with Rain.

In the Summer Season the South-East Winds should cease for three or four Days, the Sea-Weeds driving ashore and rotting, the Air becomes corrupt and sickly: Hence the Cape Europeans are affected with Head-Aches and other Disorders, which they do not feel when those Winds blow: But, in Return, the Violence of those Winds blow, joined to the Heat of the Sun, subject the Cape Europeans to sore Eyes.

It is in the Summer Season the South-East Winds should cease for three or four Days, the Sea-Weeds driving ashore and rotting, the Air becomes corrupt and sickly: Hence the Cape Europeans are affected with Head-Aches and other Disorders, which they do not feel when those Winds blow: But, in Return, the Violence of those Winds blow, joined to the Heat of the Sun, subject the Cape Europeans to sore Eyes.

The most curious and observable Phenomenon at the Cape is the Cloud that usually covers the *Table* and *Devil Mountains*, and is the Source of those violent South-East Winds. Of this, Mr. *Kalke* has given a very rational Account, from its Appearance to its Dispersion. He says, It is never less, on its first being seen, than the Size of a large Ox, often bigger. It hangs, in several Fleeces, over the *Table-Hill*, and the

* *Kalke's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 243, and 293, & seq. The same, p. 294.

* See before, p. 360. d.

* The same, vol. 2. p. 322, & seq.

* *Lequart* calls it a Mist, but erroneously.

* The

* Some say,

it is at first no bigger than a Barley-Corn, then it becomes as large as a Wallnut, and soon after covers the Top of *Table-Hill*.

1713. *Wind, or Drift Hill*; which Fleeces increasing gradually at last unite and form a large Cloud, which covers the Summit of these two Hills. After this has rested for sometime, without Change or Motion, the Wind bursts out suddenly from it with the utmost Fury.

Dr. Robt. THE Skirts of this Cloud are white, but seem much compacter than the Matter of common Clouds. The upper Parts are of a Lead Colour, owing to the refracted Rays of Light. No Rain falls from it, but sometimes it discovers a great Humidity; at which Times it is of a darker Colour, and the Wind issuing from it is broken, rising by Fits of short Continuance. In its usual State, the Wind keeps-up its first Fury unabated, for one, two, three, or eight Days, sometimes a Month together. The Cloud seems all the while undiminished, though little Fleeces are seen torn from the Skirts, from Time to Time, and hurried down the Sides of the Hills, vanishing when they reach the Bottom; so that during the Storm the Cloud seems supplied with new Matter.

And Esch. WHEN the Cloud begins to brighten-up, these Supplies fail, and the Wind proportionably abates. At length, the Cloud growing transparent, the Wind ceases. During the Continuance of these South-East Winds, the Table-Valley is torn by furious Whirlwinds. If they blow warm, they are generally of short Duration; and in this Case the Cloud soon disappears. This Wind rarely blows after Sun-set, and never longer than till towards Midnight, though the Cloud remains; but then it is thin and clear. But when the Wind blows cold, it is a sure Sign it will last for some Time, an Hour at Noon and Midnight excepted; when it seems to lie still to recover itself, and then lets loose its Fury anew.

Time are covered for. MR. KOLBEN, not satisfied with the Solution of others*, supposes this Cloud to be made-up of an infinite Number of small Particles, driven by the Easterly Winds (which reign in the Torrid Zone almost all the Year) against that Corner of the Cape facing the East and contiguous to the Sea. These Particles, thus stopped in their Course, become compressed and visible in small Assemblages or Clouds; in which Bodies they are driven-up to the Summits of those Hills, where being repelled by the upper Air, they are

hurried-down with such Violence as to become Whirlwinds†, which are stronger on the Table and Drift Hills; because being higher than the rest, the Pressure on them is greater. These Clouds are not peculiar to those Hills, but are seen on all the Mountains that lie near the Cape; as on the Hottentot Holland, Stellenbosch, and Drakenstein Hills; those called *Nerwegen*, near False Bay, and even the Stone Hills‡.

2. The Waters in the Cape Countries.

The Sea-Water: Irregular Tides. Land Waters, their Colour: Their Taste. Brackish Waters. Hot-Baths: Their Qualities and Effects. Cape Water excellent.

THE Sea at the Cape of Good Hope is irregularly greenish, owing much to the Reflection of the green Hills and Rocks; also to the Coral Shrubs which float in large Quantities near the Cape. In the Water they are green and soft; but, when cast on Shore, they harden, and become white, black, or a deep Red.

THE twenty-fourth of September, 1707, in the Morning, a Quarter of an Hour after Ebb, it was Flood at the Cape, and immediately fell again: Then the Flood suddenly returned, and a Quarter after it ebbed again: In short, from eight to ten o'Clock the Sea ebbed and flowed seven Times.

As the Sun came to the Equator the twenty-third of September, nine Hours, fifty-three Minutes, nineteen Seconds after Noon, making at the Cape the vernal Equinox, from whence it was two Days, two Hours, fifty-eight Minutes, fifty Seconds to the new Moon; the Author queries, Whether the extraordinary Tides might not be owing to those two Causes, joined to the Winds that spring-up from the Cavetta at the Bottom of the Sea, by which, as Sailors know, Ships are often tossed; but there were none at that Time in the Harbour.

WITH regard to the Land-Waters, those about the Cape (which, for the most Part, have their Sources on the Summits of high Hills, and descend, with great Rapidity, over Pebbles and Flint-Stones) are white and very clear, extremely

* *Perrenius, Schreuzer, and Dr. Huxley* assign the Hills and the Situation of the Cape, as the Basis on which the Cape Mountains are to be accounted for.

† It is hard to conceive such an Effect to proceed from the bare Resistance of the upper Air; and by the Wind rarely blowing after Sun-set, it should seem, that this Luminary is the principal Cause thereof.

‡ *Kolben's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 125, & 109. *Kolben* observes, that the green Colour of the Sea about Cape de Perle is owing to the vast Quantities of floating Reeds and Grass that grow in it. This Reed is between three and four Yards long, wide at Bottom and narrow at Top. They often bend it to the Shape of a Trumpet, and, when dry, tie the Parts together. The Instrument then attains a great Firmness, and yields as fine a Sound as any Trumpet whatever. This the Author had experienced; and hence, doubtless, the Portuguese gave this Weed, or Reed, the Name of *Trunka*, or Trumpet. See the Figure, Plate 1. Vol. II.

* *Kolben*, as before, p. 305, & 109.

1713.

Kotlen.

sweet and wholesome; but those Streams, which have a different Origin and Course, are of a dark Red, or the Colour of Iron Ore. Many likewise are blackish, from the Earth and Mud through which they run.

Their Taste.

THE Waters about the Cape differ much in Taste. All the River Waters are sweet and pleasant throughout their Course: Others lose both the Colour and Sweetness that they have at their Sources, and become brackish in their Progress: Some by standing turn into the finest Salt. Some Springs on the *Tyger-Hills*, *Tyger-Valley*, and elsewhere, are brackish at their Sources, yet tolerably palatable and wholesome; but if not used immediately, become too salt for drinking.

Drainish Waters.

SOME of these brackish Waters are excellent Purifiers of the Blood: This they perform by Sweat and Stool, causing a mighty Itching all over, which Effects cease when the Blood is well cleansed, that is, in about a Week. As the luteous and saline Particles of these Waters quickly subside, in warm Weather, or near the Fire, they soon sink.

THOSE Waters which fall with Rapidity from the Hills, and pass through Channels that are thick shaded with Trees, Bushes, or Shrubs, are so extremely cold, that they retain that Quality when laid-up in Vessels, so as to make a Man shiver when he drinks them.

SOME Waters here are warm, others downright hot. Such are two celebrated warm Baths, about thirty Miles from the Cape, which the Author often visited.

Hot Baths.

WE have already mentioned three hot Springs in *Waveren Colony*, of which the most frequented is that at the *Black-Hill*. There are two Roads to it: One passing through *Drakenstein*, crosses the *Voxatians Mountains*, and then the *Endless River*, at *Knoblaars*, or *Garlie Kraal*. The other Road lies through *Hottentot-Holland*, and over its Mountains to *Hout-Hoek*, or *Wood-Corner*: Thence crossing four small Rivers near their Sources, it passes on to the *Belantier-Kraal*, or *Water-Kraal*, which last is but one Hour short of the *Black-Hill Bath*.

THE Mold of this Hill is coal-black, light, clammy, greasy, and so soft, that Horses sink in the Way up. Hence those who visit it ascend on Foot. The Hill is thought to be hollow, because the Bath-Water falling with a great Noise into a Hole, runs under Ground no-body knows whether. *Kotlen* could find no Bottom at sixty Foot Depth. There issue hot Waters likewise from several Holes dug in the Hill. Their Surface is covered with a bluish, greasy Sort of Skin,

and about the Edges there gathers a fine luteous Substance, which dried serves the Painters instead of Oker.

THESE Waters are clear as Crystal, and more fleshy than any others the Author had tasted, yet agreeable. They are used for all Uses but Washing, because they give Linen a yellow Tinge that never comes-out. At entering the Bath one is seized with an almost intolerable Burning, especially if you enter by little and little: But it is soon over, and then the Water is a charming Sedative; yet in five or six Minutes you are obliged to quit it, for it so raises and contracts the lower Belly, that your Breath is, in a Manner, gone. You recover it presently on going to Bed, where you fall into a generous Sweat; after which you rise with an Alertness that surprizes you. Bathing once a Day for a Fortnight, the Body, by Stool, Sweat, and sometimes a Vomit, will be thoroughly cleansed, as it is apprehended, of every Sort of peccant Matter. *Kotlen* knew a Person restored by it to his Hearing, another cured of Lameness in his Arm, and a Woman of the venereal Disease, besides several of complicated Dilemper.

To conclude this Article about Water: The Author believes, that those at the Cape are inferior to none for Brightness, Sweetness, and Salubrity. The Cape Physicians (or, more properly, Surgeons) have found them very salutiferous in almost every Case. He was likewise assured by several Dutch Commanders, that every King's Ship, returning from the Indies, is obliged to touch at the Cape, and take-in a large Cask of the Spring-Water there for the King of Denmark, as being looked upon at that Court the best in the World. It preserves its Brightness and Sweetness at Sea in the longest Voyages. On board the Ship, in which the Author returned, it suffered no Manner of Alteration, excepting that it changed a very little under the Line, but quickly recovered itself.

3. Fossils in the Cape Countries.

Kinds of Earth. *Bixamen*. Stones. Marble. False Eagle-Stone. Silver and Copper Ore. Salt, &c. produced: Its Qualities.

THE Fossils here may be reduced to Earths, Stones, and Minerals.

THE Colonies produce both Clay proper for Earthen-Ware, which they make, and for Bricks, whereof most of their Houses are built. They yield also red and white Chalk. With the first

* *Kotlen's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 20, and 210, & seq. before, p. 285, & seq.

† The same, p. 21, & seq.

‡ See before, p. 343, b.

§ *Kotlen*, 20

the *Hottentot* Women paint their Faces. The last the *Europeans* employ in whitewashing their Houses.

IN the Niches of the Rocks, near the hot Baths in the *Drakenstein* Country, there are found several bituminous Substances, green, white, yellow, and other Colours. Among the rest there is a Kind of natural Bitumen, Stone-Pitch, or Stone-Oil, found trickling from the Rocks: Its Smell is like stale Urine. The *Hottentots* say it is the Urine of Ermin, mixed with fine Dust, and give it, dissolved in Water, to their Cattle to open their Body. It heals Wounds quickly, if applied in the same Form.

THE Stones in *Table-Hill*, *Hottentot-Halland*, *Stellenbosch*, *Drakenstein*, and other Mountains, lie in Rows one upon another, with a Matter like Marrow between the Strata. They are as hard as Pebbles, and employed in building the strongest Walls. The running Waters yield Abundance of Sand-Stone; and in the Spunges, cast-up by the Sea, is found a green Stone generated of the Sea-Sand, and very friable.

THERE are, about the *Cape*, many Quarries of split Stone fit for Lime, but Muscle-Shells supply that Article; likewise Stone proper for Mill-Stones, but being difficult to work, the Colony-Mills are furnished from *Holland*.

Near the *Cape* has been discovered a Quarry of a very hard brown-red Stone, called there Heart-Stone, spotted with Blue, and veined with White, which being polished, equals, in Brightness and Beauty, the finest Marble. Touch-Stones, fine grey Whetstones and Flints are common here.

IN the Gravel and Marbles is found the false Eagle-Stone. It is roundish, of the Size of a Chestnut, hollow, and generally filled with Sand or other Matter. Its Outside seems covered with Ruff. It is presented to Strangers as a great Curiosity.

SOME of the Stones at the *Cape* resemble Smoke Shells, others Crystals. In short, their Variety, both in Shape and Colour, is endless.

WITH respect to mineral Ores, Silver Ore has been found on the *Table-Hill*, the *Drakenstein*, and other Hills. Copper Ore, of a rich Kind, has been brought-down, by the *Namaqua Hottentots*, to the *Cape*, from high Hills, thence called the *Copper Hills*, an hundred Leagues from the *Cape*. It is of so rich a Kind, that it is affirmed the Copper, under very hot Sun, melts and runs down the Hills. Without Doubt, Iron Mines are to be found in the *Cape* Countries, since from

Time immemorial they have had this Metal for their Weapons.

HERE it may not be improper to speak of the Production of Salt at the *Cape*, which is not by Springs, but by the Action of the Sun upon the Rain-Water in this Manner: After the Winter, or wet Months, vast Quantities of Water remain in the Hollows of the Valleys, the Bottom of which is generally a fat Lead-colour Clay, which prevents the Water soaking through it. These are the *Cape* Salt-Pits, from one Mile to six in Compass, and never above three Foot deep. The Water falling into these natural Basins, is of a foul, blackish Colour, but it soon grows bright and palatable, continuing so till October, when it catches a Salt Taste, with a reddish Hue. As the Summer advances, the Saltiness increases, and the Colour deepens to a strong Red. About the Edges of these Pits, and never above three Foot deep, the Water is changed into a fine Salt, which appears like a white Substance on the Edges of these Pits, and increases till all the Water in the Pits is changed into a fine Salt, which happens about the Summer Solstice. This Salt is hexangular, white, clear, and transparent, when taken from the Center of these Pits; where (if well filled with Water) it is three Inches thick, but falls short of the *European* Salt, for preserving either Flesh or Fish at Sea. Mr. Kellin ascribes this Defect to its having a great Proportion of Nitre in it, which so impregnates the *Cape* Air, that even the Grass in the Valleys has a saluginous Flavour.

4. Grain, Fruits, and other Vegetables.

The Soil in the Colonies, and its Produce. *Husbandry of the Europeans. Sowing Season. Fines. Cape Pines. Gardens. Vegetables. Amasquas-Trees. Cripple-Trees. Stink-Wood Trees. Kanna-Root. Dakh and Bukhu-Plants. Exotics.*

THE Soil about the *Cape* is generally rich, consisting in the Valleys, for the most Part, of Clay, or sandy Earth, which needs little Manuring. This Article relating to Agriculture, and the Cultivation of Vegetables, relates wholly to the *Europeans*, for the *Hottentots* do not trouble themselves about either. The Colonies produce very plentifully the Necessaries of Life. Wheat and all *European* Grains, Oats excepted, prosper exceedingly; one Bushel of Wheat, for Instance, yielding from thirty to forty Bushel; Barley from fifty to seventy; Pease from thirty

* Kellin's Voyage, vol. 1. p. 115, & seq.

is full of Errors in every Line. He supposes it to be Rock Salt, and dug out of the Earth. This Nitre is supposed, by a Correspondent of the Author's, to proceed wholly from the Air, impregnating both the Earth and the Rain Water.

* Kellin, as before, p. 196, & seq.

1713.
Kotlen.

to sixty; and Beans from twenty to twenty-five. ^a These last suffer much by Caterpillars. But all Attempts to raise Oats have been unsuccessful, the Violence of South-East Winds either scattering them when they arrive to Maturity, or they degenerate into wild Oats from the Nature of the Soil. Their Corn also frequently suffers from the Elephants, Deer, or other wild Beasts; as also from the Mildew in some Years, but the large Crops they have, make them sufficient Ample for their Lives.

It is said by
the English
writers.

THEIR ploughing at the Cape is a very laborious Work, from the Fatness and stiffness of the Soil, which sometimes requires, in Summer Seasons, twenty Oxen to draw one Plough. Their Ploughs differ from ours in *Europe*, being furnished with two Wheels, one on each Side, of unequal Diameters, that on the Side next the Furrow being considerably larger than that next the Ridge. The Plough-Share is split in two, as it were, one Side bending considerably out, the other printing straight forwards. This they call an half Plough-Share, ours they call a whole one; and when they use the latter, they use no Coulters.

According to
the
English
writers.

THEIR sowing Season begins in July, and their Harvest is at its Height about the End of December. They sow their Corn very thin, to prevent the Grain from choking itself when it comes up. They do not thresh it, but tread it out with Horses or Oxen on a Floor made of Cow-Dung and Straw mixed with Water; at which Work a Team will do more in one Day, than a dozen Men will do in four or five. The Company has the Tythe of all Corn produced at the Cape, and buys the rest of the Proprietors at a settled Price.

Vineyards.

VINES were brought to the Cape from *Perfia* and the *Rhone*. It was some Time before they could raise Quantities sufficient for Vineyards, but now the Lands about the Cape produce great Plenty of Wine, scarce a Cottage being without a Vineyard. They plant their Stocks in Rows, and suffer them not to rise above three Foot, lest the South-Easterly Winds should destroy their Grapes, which suffer likewise from Locusts, and the *Sugger*-Worm. Their Wine-Stocks bear the third Year more than ours in *Europe* do the fifth. Their Vintage begins in February, and continues all March. The Cape-Wine is delicious and strong, but mellow with Age till it becomes delicious and rich, equal to the best *Canary*, or *Hock*; but for want of Staves, they are not able to keep a Stock by them. They sell at the Cape from eight to ten Crowns a Barrel, but in the *Indies* bear a considerable Price.

Cape Wine.

THEIR Gardens at the Cape produce most of the Vegetables and Roots found in our *European*, which here grow to a larger Size than with us; the Head of a *Cape* Cabbage weighing from thirty to forty Pound, and a Potato from six to ten. Their Melons are excellent. All *European* Fruit-Trees, as the Apple, Pear, Quince, Peach, and Apricot, prosper well, by the common Methods of Propagation from the Stone or Root. In the Company's fine Garden at the Cape-Town the *Japan* Apple, Orange, Lemon, Citron, Almond, Pomegranate and Fig-Tree, with numberless Exotics from *Asia* and *America*, excel their parent Fruit, and appear in the greatest Beauty. Their Figs are delicious, especially that called *Pisang*, brought from *Java*. These Advantages, with the great Profusion of natural Flowers which adorn their Gardens, make them very agreeable to the Eye. The Aloe, which so seldom appears to us in its Beauty, bears its Blossoms in the Fields incultivated by Art.

Cape
Garden.

As to the vegetable Kingdom, of which *Kalherus* ^b gives a large Catalogue, the Cape Countries naturally produce many Plants of the noblest Kind. All the different Kinds of Aloe, which appear so regarded in our Climate, grow there spontaneously in the Fields, and cover the Rocks with a blooming Fragrance. The Almond-Tree is a Native here. Of the *Ficus*, or Fig-Marygold, here are numberless Species, all disclosing a Profusion of beautiful Flowers, and some of them yielding agreeable Fruits. The most remarkable Trees peculiar to the Cape Countries, are the *Amazigue*. This Tree the *Europeans* here ^c call *Koultien*. It grows to about nine or ten Foot high, and pretty thick. The Leaves resemble those of the Bird Pear-Tree; the Blossoms are of a whitish Red, like those of the Apple-Tree, and of a fragrant Smell. It produces Pods, each containing five or six Seeds, as big as a Pea, of a brown Colour, oval Shape, and shining Talle. The Bark is thin, Ash-coloured, and smooth. The Timber is rarely visited by Worms. When green, it is very flexible; but when dry, it is scarce penetrable by any Tool. If a Branch be cut-off, it yields a bright yellow Gum.

THE Cripple-Tree is another Native of the Cape. It is of the dwarf Kind, with crooked knotted Branches, the Leaves broad, thick, and rough, like those of the Apple-Tree. The Fruit resembles the Pine-Apple; the Bark is thick and wrinkled, and used by the Cape Tanners. The Cape Surgeons pulverize it, and administer it with good Success in Dysenteries. The Wood is chiefly used for Firing. The Stink-Wood Tree is usu- ^d

Stink-Wood
Tree.

^a *Kalherus's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 66. & seq.
In 1698, they were sold at twenty Souz (or about Ten-pence) the English Quart.
p. 75. & seq.

^b *Legent* discommends the Cape Wines, as green. He says, "Kallier, as before,

P. 374

*Rebentley Coru Threshing
from Kolben.*



N^o 108

P. 380

Kilometer Marriage from Kolben.



Plat. XXXV. Vol. 3. P. 374

The Dokha Plant, called by the
Indians Bangus, from Kolben.

Nanger Spirea
Kolben

The Bukhu
from



1713.

Kallip.

ally of the Size of an Oak, the Leaves about a three Fingers broad: When under the Tool, it yields so filthy a Scent, that no Workman can scarce endure it: But as the Wood is finely grain'd and clouded, the *Cape Europeans* use it in their Furniture, and the bad Smell goes-off with Time.

Kanna-
Root.

KANNA is a Root growing in the *Cape Countries*, of which the *Hottentots* are so excessively fond, that for a Bit of it they will do any thing. They are not so ready at finding it as the *Europeans*. Father *Tobard* supposes it the same with the *Jin-feng* of the *Chinese*, and indeed it has many of its Qualities. It produces in the *Hottentots*, who chew it, the same Effects as Opium does in the *Turks*.

Bakha
Plant.

BAKHA is another Plant in high Esteem with the *Hottentots*, who use it instead of Tobacco, when they cannot purchase the latter, or intermix'd with Tobacco when their Store falls short. This is a Species of wild Hemp, which the *Cape Europeans* sow chiefly for the Use of the *Hottentots*, who call a Mixture of it with Tobacco, *Buschek*.

The *Spiraea* is another Plant much regarded by the *Hottentots*, who, towards the Close of the Winter Season, when the Leaves begin to wither, gather them in large Quantities, till they are fit to pulverize. The Powder, which is of a bright Yellow, they employ to powder their Hair, as we use Powder for our Wigs. They call it *Buk-hil*, and it makes a considerable Part of their Dress.

Bakhi
Plant.

Bakhi.

The *Cape* is now plentifully furnished with Exotics, both Trees and Plants, from *Europe* and *India*. The Fir-Tree, the Oak, the Camphire-Tree, the Cypress, the Pine, the Orange, Lemon, Citron, Pomegranate, Quince, Apricot, Peach, Apple, Pear, and Plum-Trees thrive here, with most other Foreigners, either Shrubs, Plants, Roots, or Flowers. Chestnut and Walnut-Trees abound, and some Planters have large Plantations of Almond-Trees, of which they make considerable Profits. The Cinnamon-Tree has been brought here from *Seydon*, and answers well. All Manner of Pulse and Roots from *Europe* is plentifully to be met with in the *Cape Gardens*.

SECT. II.

Beasts, tame and wild.

Tame Cattle very cheap. Horses and Dogs. The

Elephant. The Rhinoceros: The African has two Horns: Attacks not Men: Mortal Fox to the Elephant. Wild Dogs. Tiger-Wolf. The Lion: Tiger: Leopard: Buffalo: Elk: Zebra and wild Ape: Raccoon. Various Kinds of wild Goats. Wild Hog. Earth Hog. Porcupine. Bobbin. Indian Mouse. Rattle Mouse. The Ermine. Cape Hart. Wild Cat. Bush-Cat. Grivet-Cat. Stink-Bat.

THE *Cape Settlements* are well stocked with Cattle great and small. Their Oxen are large, (but not Hump-backed, as some affirm) and weigh often from five to six hundred Pound, some a great deal more. Their Sheep are numerous, and the Flesh well tasted, the poorer Sort using the Fat as we do Butter; from which, when melted, it is not easily distinguished. What is most remarkable, is the Length and Thickness of their Tails, weighing from fifteen to twenty Pound. The Lands near the *Cape* are so covered with Cattle, that the *Hottentots* yearly sell vast Numbers to the *Europeans* for Trifles, a Pound of Tobacco purchasing a fat Ox, and half a Pound a good Sheep.

THESE Cattle are not subject to the Murrain, or Rot, but often suffer by the wet Weather, and sometimes are much infested by the Beasts of Prey, which abound in these Colonies. It may be easily imagined Provisions are reasonable at the *Cape*. In 1698, when this Colony was not so flourishing by far as at present, the Company sold Bread at a Penny per Pound, Beef and Mutton at Two-pence, and a Measure of Corn of an hundred and forty Pound for three Crowns. It may, from its great Increase since, be reasonable to believe, that Provisions, which the Colony can never consume, must bear a lower Price.

THE Breed of Horses at the *Cape* was brought from *Persia*. These are generally small, and of a Chestnut Colour. They are so numerous, that some *Cape Settlers* have from fifty to two or three hundred a-piece. They feed them with Grass and Barley, having no Oats. They are so cheap, that in 1712 Mr. *Kallip* saw three young ones sold at the *Cape-Town* for eighteen Dutch Shillings.

THE Dogs at the *Cape*, particularly those of the *Hottentots*, are only remarkable for their Ugliness.

As for wild Beasts, there is, perhaps, no where to be found a greater Variety than in the *Hottentot Countries*. Of these the Elephant chases

* *Kallip's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 216, and 253, & seq.

† treat of it more particularly, when we come to describe *Eastern Territory*.

‡ *Dapper* says, the *Hottentots* plant the *Dakko*, they being the only *Hottentot* Nation that either sow or plant. He adds, that they sometimes eat it, at other Times infuse it in Water to drink, and that both Ways is intoxicating. *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 85.

* *Kallip*, as before, vol. 1. p. 212, and 264.

† *Kallip*, as before, vol. 2. p. 249.

‡ The same, p. 261.

* See before, Vol. I. p. 416 b. but see full

† *Dapper* says, the *Hottentots* plant the *Dakko*, they being the only *Hottentot* Nation that either sow or plant. He adds, that they sometimes eat it, at other Times infuse it in Water to drink, and that both Ways is intoxicating. *Ogilby's Africa*, p. 85.

* *Dapper* writes it, *Dakko*.

† The same, p. 64, & seq.

‡ *Kallip*, as before,

§ The same, p. 1.

1773.

Kilmer.

the Precedence. This Animal is much bigger here than in any other Parts of the World. The Female is less than the Male, and carries its Dugs between the Fore-Foot. A Proof of their Strength appeared from a Trial made at the Cape, in which one of them being yoked to a Ship of no small Burden, dragged it along. The Teeth of these Elephants is another Proof of their Size, their weighing from sixty to an hundred and twenty Pounds. The Cape Elephant, for the rest, differs not much from those of other Countries. It is a vulgar Mistake, to suppose this Animal sleeps standing, *Kalher* having often remarked their Impressions, left on the Grass, where they had passed the Night. He Dungs the *Hottentots* use when they want Tobacco; and the same Author asserts, that it has nearly the same Relish. The Hairs in the large Tuft at the End of their Tail are a Foot and half long, and as thick and strong as a Hog's Bristles. They trouble the Water before they drink, probably to carry-off Crudities and Indigestions, in the same Manner as Geese, Ducks, and other Birds, mix Sand and Gravel with their Water.

THE Rhinoceros is another Quadrupede, frequently seen in the Cape Colonies, but so differently described by Authors, that one would imagine they meant not the same Creature. His Skin, which is of a dark Ash Colour, inclining to black, resembles that of the Elephant, both as to Appearance and Hardness: For it is difficult to pierce it with a Knife. Painters have represented this Animal much more beautiful than he really is. He has no Scales upon his Body; but the Scars and Scratches of the Bushes, which cover his Hide, and intersect one another, look at a Distance like Scales.

His Mouth is like that of the Hog, but more pointed: He grunts also like one, but is not heard far. The Horn on his Nose is of a dark Grey, bent like a Plough-share. It grows to the Length of two Feet, and not more. With this, when angry, he tears-up the Ground; and takes-up large Stones and throws them far back over his Head with great Force. On his Fore-head grows another Horn, never above six Inches high. This last Horn has the Form of a half Bowl inverted, is hollow, and looks upon his

Head not unlike a Cupola. His Ears are small, and his Legs shorter than the Elephant's. His Sense of Smelling is wonderful quick. He catches the Scent of any Creature to Windward at a considerable Distance, and makes towards it in a direct Line, tearing up all Trees and Bushes in his Way.

If not provoked, he attacks not a Man, unless in a red Coat; for then he runs furiously at him, and if he seizes him, sings him over his Head with such Force, that he is killed by the Fall. The Beast then feeds on him, by licking the Flesh from the Bones with his rough and prickly Tongue. The Eyes are very small for its Size, and he sees only forward: So that though very swift, yet being slow in turning, the Way to avoid him, is, when within eight or ten Paces, to whip a little on one Side, and it costs him much awkward Trouble to get Sight of you again. This *Kalher* often experienced.

He is not fond of Grass, choosing rather Shrubs, Broom, and Thistles, particularly a Shrub not unlike the Juniper, common at the Cape, where it is called the *Rhinoceros-Bush*.

He is a mortal Enemy to the Elephant, who whenever he espies him, makes off as fast as he can; but if he surprises the Elephant, he rips-up his Belly with the Horn on his Snout. *Kalher* often eat of its Flesh with great Satisfaction. His Skin, Horn, and Blood are used in Medicine. Many at the Cape have Cups of the Horn set in Silver or Gold. Wine poured into one of them rises and bubbles-up as if boiling, and, if there be Poison in it, it immediately splits; but flies to Pieces if Poison only be put into it. This the Author has often been Witness of. The Chips made in turning the Cups are saved and returned to the Owners, being esteemed good in Convulsions, Faintings, and other Disorders, as the Blood is for opening Obstructions and healing inward Sores. *Kalher* takes the Rhinoceros for the Leviathan.

THE wild Dog is another Cape Animal. They range in great Drones, and clear the Place where they come, of all the wild Beasts or Flocks, before they remove. What they kill, they carry to a Place of Rendezvous, and let the Europeans and

* *Kalher's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 96, & seq.

However that be, there are certainly different Species of them in different Countries, as there are of most Kinds of Animals. See before, p. 308. That of some East India Rhinoceroses is above three Foot long. See Philosophical Transactions, N° 470, p. 340. Hence it appears, that *Martial* is not in the wrong, Lib. 4. Epig. 82, where he gives the Rhinoceros two Horns; but his Critics have erred, as being acquainted only with the Asian Rhinoceros, which has but one Horn. In the Figure inserted in *Kalher's* Relation, this Horn is placed on the Neck of the Animal, which shews it was not of that Author's Drawing, but rather copied from *Albert Durer*. The Tongue of the Rhinoceros, brought to England in 1739, was very smooth: perhaps, owing to its being very young. See Philosophical Transactions, N° 470, p. 531. Of this we shall give a Description and proper Draughts in our natural History of the East Indies. A German pretended to do great Cures with the Salt extracted from its Skin.

1713. *Hottentots*, who follow them, take what they think proper, without grumbling. The *Hottentots* eat the Flesh they take, the Whites salt it for their Slaves.

Of Wolves they have two Sorts; one resembling our *European* Wolf in every Respect, the other called the *Tyger-Wolf*. This last Species is of the Size of a common sheep-Dog, but rather larger. His Head is like that of an *English* Bull-Dog. His Hair is frizzled like our Curs, and spotted like a *Tyger*. In his Claws he resembles the Cat. His Tail is short. He lurks in Holes and Cliffs in the Day, and preys only in the Night. The *Lion*, *Tyger*, and *Leopard* are his great Enemies, and never spare him when he falls in their Way.

The *Lion* is often seen in the *Cape* Countries. Those Moderns who contradicted what the Antients said, with respect to the Hardness of his Bones, Mr. *Kolben* proves to be mistaken: He found several of these, when dried, to become as hard and solid as Flints, and capable, like them, of striking Fire. He likewise observed, the hollow Channel in the Shin-Bone to be as small as that in the Tube of a Tobacco-Pipe. The *Lion* always gives his Prey the mortal Blow, accompanied with a terrible Roar, before he bites him. A Centinel at the *Cape* was thus knocked-down by a *Lion*, and carried-off; and, in 1707, a *Lion*, in the same Manner, struck-down a large Ox, and made his Way with him over a high Wall.

When a *Lion* erects and shakes his Mane, as well as thwacks his Back and Sides with his Tail, it is a Sign he is wrath, or pinched with Hunger; in which Case it is Death to come in his Way, otherwise not. When a Horse discovers this Animal, he runs-away full speed, and throws his Rider, if possible, to run the faster. The best Method is for the Man to dismount, for the *Lion* will pursue only the Horse. *Kolben*, who had often eat of *Lion's* Flesh, says, it tastes like Venison, and has no ill Quality.

Two *Europeans* walking in a Field near the *Cape*, a *Lion* rushed from behind the Bushes, where they generally lurk, and made at one of them the mortal Blow, but missed his Aim, through the Nimbleness of the Fellow; who courageously seized him by the Mane, and plunging his Hand down the Beast's Throat, laid hold of his Tongue, and there held him, with hard Struggles, till his Companion, who had a Gun, shot the Creature dead. There is twenty-five Florins Reward at the *Cape* for every one who kills a *Lion*, *Tyger*, *Leopard*, &c. The *Lion's* Fat is of great Value there.

A *Dutch* Officer, with his Party, having encamped in Tents, it was suspected, by the Noise of the Horses and Cattle in the Night, that some wild Beast was approaching. Upon this, the Centries were called to be on their Guard; but one of them not answering, a File was sent-out to see what was the Matter. Finding the Musket without the Man, they marched forward to a neighbouring Rock, where they discovered a monstrous *Lion* feasting on the Body of their Comrade. The Tents being alarmed, they all came-forth to rescue the Corps; but the Beast was so fenced in the Nich, that though they made three hundred Shot and plied him with Fire-Balls, they could neither touch nor fright him. In the Morning, being joined by a Party of *Hottentots*, they soon dispatched him with their *Hassagayas*; but, by that Time, the Body had scarce any Flesh left on the Bones.

The *Cape* *Tyger* and *Leopard* differ only in the Size and Position of their Spots. In the former, who is larger, these are yellow, surrounded by Spots of black Hair; whereas in the *Leopard* the black Rings are open like a Horse-shoe. The *Hottentots* prefer its Flesh to the most delicious Meat. *Kolben* praises it, as superior, in Taste and Whiteness, to Veal: That of the young ones, he says, is as tender as Chicken. They are terribly fierce, and do great Mischief in the *Cape* Countries; but they neither eat Carriens nor any Creature which they do not kill themselves.

ONE *Bourman*, a Burgher at the *Cape*, walking by himself in the Fields, was surprized by a *Tyger*, who leaped at his Throat, in order to suck his Blood. The Burgher, though terribly frightened, was resolved to contend for his Life, and seizing the Beast by the Head, struggled stoutly with him, and at last threw him to the Ground and himself upon him. Then he held the *Tyger*, by the Weight of his Body, and with one Hand, till with the other he drew a Knife and cut his Throat. The Beast expired immediately, but M. *Bourman* received so many Wounds and lost so much Blood, that it was long before he recovered.

In 1708, two *Leopards*, with three young ones at their Heels, entering a Sheep-Fold at the *Cape*, killed near an hundred, and regaled themselves with their Blood. When they had sucked their Fill, they tore a Carcase in three Pieces and carried them to their Young at the Door of the Fold. Then taking each a whole Carcase, the Troop began to march-off; but having been perceived when they first entered, they were way-laid on their Return, and the Female, with the

¹ *Kolben's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 101, & seq.

² The same, p. 64.

³ The same, p. 94, & seq.

⁴ The same, p. 94.

1713, three young ones, were killed, but the Male ^{Kolben, escaped.} Size of one of the Saddle Kind. His Legs are slender, and well proportioned; his Hair soft and sleek. ^{See the Plate.}

^{The Buffalo} The Buffalo is another Animal, numerous in the Cape Colonies. He differs from the *European* in Size and Colour, being larger and of a brown Red, the others being black. Hard, frizzled Hair grows on their Forehead. They are well-proportioned, and hold their Heads aloft. Their Horns are very short, incline towards the Neck, and bend inwards, the Points almost meeting. Their Skin is so hard and tough, that it is difficult to kill them without good Fire-Arms. Their Flesh is not so tender and fat as that of Oxen. At the Sight of red Cloth, or the Discharge of a Gun, he roars, tears the Ground, and runs with Fury, even through Fire and Water, at the Object of his Rage.

A LARGE Body of *Europeans* having chased one of these Animals, and driven him to the Water-Place near the Cape Harbour, the Beast turned about and ran at one of their Partners in a red Waistcoat. The Fellow slipping-by, ran to the Water-Side, and plunged in; the Buffalo pursuing him so closely, that he was forced to save himself by diving. The Ox losing Sight of the Man, turned and swam toward the opposite Shore, which was three Miles distant, and would have reached it, had he not been shot by the Way from one of the Ships in the Harbour.

^{Misses Ed.} THE *African*, or Cape Elk, is much larger than either the *European* or *American*, being generally five Foot high. The Horns are about a Foot long, and run-up twisting; but the Ends are straight, smooth, and pointed. The Head and Neck are beautiful; the upper Jaw larger than the nether; the Legs long and slender; the Tail about a Foot long; the Hair smooth, soft, and Ash-coloured. The Flesh tastes like good Beef. They climb the highest Rock, and pass the most difficult Ways, their Gait being close and swift. One of them usually weighs about four hundred Pound. As they often attempt the Gardens here, the Whites frequently take them with Snare^s, as they do in *America*.

^{Cape wild} ASSES they have here of two Sorts, one of which entirely resembles the *European* Species; but the Cape Wild-Ass, as they call him there, seems very little to deserve that Name, as being one of the most beautiful, well-shaped, lively Creatures the Author had ever seen, and resembling that Animal in nothing but his Ears. In all other Respects he is like a Horse, and of the

THIS Creature is undoubtedly the *Zebra*, ^{same as the} found also in *Kango*¹ and other Parts of *Africa*, ^{Zebra.} *Tachard* says, there are both Horses and Asses here of extraordinary Beauty. The first have a very little Head, and pretty long Ears. They are all covered over with black and white Streaks, that reach from their Back to their Belly, about four or five Fingers broad. He saw the Skin of one, which was bought to carry to *France*. As for the Asses, he says, they are of all Colours. They have a long blue List that reaches from Head to Tail; the Body being, like that of the Horse, full of broad Streaks, blue, yellow, green, black, and white, all very lively². If there are Horses at the Cape, as well as Asses, thus marked, methinks, they could not have been unknown to *Kolben*. The Figure he has given differs much from that we have in *Tachard*³, where it is named the *Zembra*, or wild Ass, in the Print. By *Zembra* must be understood the *Zebra*.

KOLBEN says, that in the Cape Countries are sometimes seen wild Horses, but not one to be found in the Colonies; because they were not discovered till after the Settlement was supplied with *Peruvian* Horses⁴; but whether the same with *Tachard's* Horses we cannot determine: For he gives no Account of them.

THE Cape Roebuck and Hart differ little from ^{Roebuck and} the *European*; only the Horns of the latter have ^{Horn.} no Branches, are about a Foot long, and run-up spirally to about half their Length.

¹ *Kolben's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 97. & *seq.* And vol. 1. p. 255.

tion of this Trap, to his Figure of it; which shews some of the Cuts are his own.

² *Ladiff* says, they might be cut; as is done to Horses, in *Germany*, which have long Ears.

³ *Tachard* says, he is streaked only with White all over.

⁴ *See before*, p. 310.

⁵ *See before*, p. 128.

⁶ *Kolben* refers, from his Description

of the Figure. *Ten Rhene*

⁷ *See the Plate.*

⁸ *See the Plate.*

⁹ *Kolben*, as



Wild Asses at Cape from Tachard.

Wild Goat
Kolbern.

1713.

Ribbon.

Goats, blue
and spotted.

OF Goats they have several Species. The tame ones are much like ours, but less. The blue Goat here is as large as our Hart. His Hair is of a fine Blue: Their Horns are not long, but run up curiously in Rings, till near the Points. His Flesh is well-tasted; but there are few to be met with, except far-up the Country. The spotted Goat, rather larger than the former, frequents the *Cape Colonies* in Flocks of above a thousand together. He is marked with red, white, and brown spots, and his Flesh eats like Venison. His Horns run up twisting to the Middle, and are about a Foot long. The young ones are often made tame enough to run with the Sheep, but their Flesh has not so good a Relish.

Crimson Goat.

THERE is another Sort of Goat, which, though it has no Name, is remarkable for its beautiful Shape and Colours. It is the Size of a large Hart. His Hair is greyish, with little Touches of Red, except on his Belly, which is almost white. From his Forehead, along the Ridge of his Back, to his Tail, runs a white Streak. Three similar Streaks cross this, in a parallel Direction, and surround his Body at equal Distances. The Horns of the Male are three Foot long, and the Points two slender: The Female has none. The Flesh of both exceeds Venison. The Diving-Goat resembles the tame one in Colour; but takes his Name from his Manner of squatting-down in the Grass, when he sees any Object, and cautiously peeping-out, now and then, till he thinks the Danger over. There is next the Rock-Goat, not much larger than our Kids in *Europe*, but very mischievous to the Vineyards. There is also in *Whidab, Kongo*, and other Countries near the *Cape*, a Sort of Goat, with Horns like a Deer, which never grows beyond the Size of a Hare. Of their Feet, they make Tobacco-Stoppers set in Silver or Gold.

Wild Hogs.

European.

OF Hogs, they have four Sorts here. The two first were brought from *Europe* and *Java*; are tame, and need no Description. The two last Species are wild, and go by the Names of the *Wild and Earth Hog*. The first of these is not common in the *Cape Colonies*, there being but few Woods to give them Shelter. The Earth-Hog is not unlike our *European* Hogs, only their Colour is reddish, and they have no Teeth. He feeds chiefly on Ants, stretching-out his long, pointed Tongue near their Hills to catch them, and lodges, like a Badger, in Holes. His Flesh is good, and he is killed with a small Stroke on the Head.

THE Porcupine is no Rarity near the *Cape*. He is about two Foot high, and three long. His

longest Quills, which are behind, are about six Inches. These he darts at his Pursuer, when pretty near, which sticking in the Flesh, causes great Pain and Inflammation. His Head and Feet resemble a Hare. His Flesh is good, but they usually hang it a Day or two in the Chimney. The Carcase, when dressed and embowelled, weighs about twenty Pounds.

BABOONS, or Apes, are pretty numerous here, but differ little from those of other Countries. As they are great Lovers of Fruit, they much infect the Orchards and Gardens, always robbing in Parties, and with surprising Forecaſt. While one Part robs the Garden, the rest stretch themselves, at small Distances, to the Place of Rendezvous on the Mountains, and as the former gather the Fruit, they toss them to the Baboon at the Head of the Line; and thus the Booty is conveyed from Hand to Hand to the Hills. This is done with great Silence. When the Baboons on the Watch discover People, they give a loud Cry; on which away scours the whole Troop, the young ones jumping on the Backs of the old ones, and posting-off in a very diverting Manner. It is supposed they punish Neglect of Duty in the Watch with Death; for when any are shot or taken, there is heard a mighty Noise among them when they get back to the Hills, and now and then some are found torn to Pieces in the Way.

THE *Cape European* sometimes tame the young ones, who prove as serviceable and watchful as our House-Dogs.

THE Cat o' Mountain at the *Cape* is like the *European*, as are their Moles, Rats, and tame Cats; also their Hares and Rabbits; which last are mostly seen in *Tosch (Dassen, or Gooey)* Island, near *Saldanna Bay*.

THE *Indian* Mouse, or *Egyptian* Water-Rat, here is as big as a Cat, with long, stiff Hair, spotted and streaked with White, Black, and Yellow; and, like the Ferret, lives on Fowls and Snakes, as well as sucks Eggs. The Rattle-Mouse is larger than our Squirrel, shaped in the Head like a Bear. The Hair on the Back is Liver-coloured, and blackish on the Sides. It purs like a Cat, and makes a rattling Noise with its Tail, and feeds on Nuts, Acorns, and the like, abiding mostly on Trees. It is exceeding nimble.

THE Ermine is often seen at the *Cape*, as also the *European*, which the *Cape European* call a Jackal, and the *Hottentots* *Tentie*, or *Kentie*.

OF wild Cats, there are some entirely blue; others with a bright red List along the Back. Another Species, largest of all, is spotted like a

* See the Figure

* Other Authors call them Harts, or Deer. See before, Vol. II. p. 713.

* *Ribbin's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 114. 2/177.

1713.

Kilken.

Tiger, and called the *Bush-Cat* from its keeping a much in Shrubs and Hedges. Another Sort, from the Scents of their Skins, are called the *Green-Cat*. The Furs of all these Kinds are much valued at the *Cape*, and give a good Price. There were no Rats here before the *Europeans* landed.

Stink-Bee.

THERE is in the *Cape* Countries a very singular Creature, which the *Dutch* call *Stink-bing-jem*, that is, *Stink-Box*, or *Stink-Breacher*, from the abominable Smell it emits when pursued. It is shaped like a Ferret, and of the Size of a middling Dog. Either Man or Beast who is surprized with this Stench, being almost knocked-down with it, starts aside to relieve himself. Meantime the *Stink-Box* makes the best of his Way, and if come-up with the second Time by his Pursuer, gives him a second Dose, and so on, till he tics his Enemy, or fairly stinks him out of the Field. If killed, there is no touching him, the *Carcass* contracts and communicates to horrid a Stench.

SECT. III.

Reptiles, Insects, Birds, and Fowl.

r. Reptiles.

The *Asp*. Dart Serpent. Tree Serpent; Strange Quality of its Fat. The *Diplas*, or *Prefter* Serpent. The *Hair-Serpent*. The *Serpent Stone*. *Cerastes*, or *Horn-Serpent*.

OF Serpents, there are many different Kinds found at the *Cape*; as the *Asp*, of an Ash-Colour speckled with Red and Yellow, with a broad Head and Neck. Near each Eye, which is flat and far in the Head, grows a fleshy Protuberance as big as a Hazle-Nut. Some are several Yards long.

THE *Eye*, or *Shoot-Serpent*, is so called from numerous white Spots on a black Skin, resembling Eyes; and from darting herself, very swiftly, either at or from an Enemy.

THE *Tree-Serpent* is so called from her Resemblance to the Branches of Trees, about which she winds herself, only a little speckled. She is about two Yards long, and three Quarters of an Inch thick. The Fat of this Snake has this surprising Quality, that if mixed-up in Candles, it represents the Room as full of Serpents.

THE *Blind Slow-Worm* is a Serpent with black Scales, spotted with Brown, Red, and White. Their Bite is not very poisonous.

THE *Diplas*, or *Thirst-Serpent*, (called also the *Prefter*, or *Inflamer*) is about three Quarters of a Yard long, with a black Back, broad Neck, and is very nimble in its Attacks. Its Bite is very dangerous, and produces an excruciating Thirst.

A FELLOW at the *Cape* being bitten by one in the Calf of the Leg, immediately tied his Garter tight about the Knee, to stop the Course of the Poison upwards; and repairing to a Smith's House, asked impatiently for Drink, giving him an Account of his Misfortune. The Smith told him he must drink nothing, but yield to have his Leg opened, which was much swelled. On opening it, there issued a great Quantity of a watry yellow Humour: Then the Smith tied-on a proper Plaster, and advised him to refrain from Drink a Quarter of an Hour: He did so, and in that Time his Thirst was considerably abated, and the Humour collected. The Operator taking-off the Plaster to give it Vent, cleaned the Wound, and clapt it on again. He also took-off the Bandages above the Knee, and in a little Time his Patient was cured.

THE *Hair-Serpent* is also found at the *Cape*. The *Portuguese* call them *Cabrats de Capella* from their yellow Hair. It is about a Yard long, and three Quarters of an Inch thick. Its Poison is esteemed of the most malignant Kind. There is no Remedy, but immediately applying the *Serpent-Stone*, of which there are many at the *Cape*. It is an artificial Composition, prepared by the *Bramini* in *India*, who keep the Secret to themselves. It is shaped like a Bean, the Matter in the Middle whitish, the rest of a Sky Blue. Whenever this is applied, it sticks close, without Bandage or Support, and imbibes the Poison till it can receive no more, and then drops-off. Being then laid in Milk, it purges itself of the Venom, turning the Milk yellow, and so is applied again, till by its not sticking, it discovers the Poison is exhausted. *Kilken* saw the Experiment made on a Child, with Success.

HOUSE Serpents are very common at the *Cape*, but their Bite is harmless; as also many other Sorts, which are too various to be described.

TACHARD, and many *Europeans* at the *Cape* say, that there are horned Serpents in these Parts; but *Kilken* could never see one, nor meet with the Person who could give him any satisfac-

* *Kilken's Voyage*, vol. i. p. 115. & *Fig.*the Figure. *Kilken* killed several, but could not find the Stone, which many affirm is in the Head.* Some say, it is made of the real *Serpent-Stone*, some Part of the Serpent's Head, Teeth, Heart and Liver, mixed with white medicinal Earth, or *Serpent-Wood*, and all ground together: But *Kilken* could never hear that the Receipt was tried.* This seems to be the same Species with that worshipped in *India*.



Animals from Kolben.

The Zebra at the Cape

p. 378



the Cape Sheep.

p. 375



Tiger Wolf

p. 377



Musk Cat

p. 380



1713.

Hottentots.

tory Account of the Make or Nature of them. * of their three Plagues, Flies and Wind being the other two; but the last always rid them of the two former.

The Horn in the Cut belonged to a Physician at the Cape, but was not taken there. It resembled polished Ivory, and was of the same Shape and Dimensions as in the Figure. *Bracon Francisci*, in his *American Flower-Bugs*, says, there are horned Serpents about *Mexico*; twenty Foot long, and as thick as a Man's Waist. It is called there *Makokoth*, that is, *Stag-Serpent*, because the Head is like that of a Stag, but the Horns appear not till it grows old †.

2. Insects.

Sea-Insects. The Sea-Horse. Ants, Bees, Flies. Grasshoppers. Gold Beetles, a Dray. Bugs. The Cape Scorpion. Spiders. Mites. The Sugar-Worm. Weevils. Tadpoles.

Sea-Insects.

THE Insects at the Cape may be distinguished into Sea, River and Land-Insects.

Of Sea-Insects here are many. The Sea-Flea is of the Size and Shape of a Shrimp; it sticks fast to Fishes, and plagues them with its Sting, as the Sea-Louse, which is much like a Horse-Fly, does with its Mouth. This last is covered with a hard Shell, and has a great Number of Legs. Of Sea-Worms there is one Sort very curious, about six Inches long, and an Inch thick, the Head, Mouth, Neck and Breast exactly resembling an Horse; whence, *Kolben* says, it may properly be termed a Sea-Horse †. The hind Part is curved, and turns to a Point; the Body, below the Neck, is flatish, and seems to have Ribs; the Back yellow, the Belly whitish. All that the Author had, were found dead on the Shore. Of River-Insects there are Leeches and Water-Snakes, like those in *Europe*, six Inches long; but no Water-Mice.

Sea-Horse.

Ants, Bees, Flies.

As to Land-Insects, Ants are very numerous, and of several Sorts, covering whole Valleys with their Hills or Nests, but never infest the cultivated Lands. Bees they have, but the Cape Europeans do not give much into hiving them, the *Hottentots* furnishing them at an easy Rate with Rock-Honey, which has a better Flavour than that of the Hive.

Of Flies they have many Species. One greenish Sort is of the Nature of the *Spanish Flies*, or *Cantharides*, and used by the Cape Surgeons for the same Purpose.

FLEAS they are much troubled with in the Summer Season, as well as NITS. There are one

It may be easily guessed from their Way of living, that the *Hottentots* are no Strangers to Lice, but the *Europeans* are free of this Vermin as soon as they arrive at the Cape. In Return, they are much plagued with Bugs. They get rid of them by painting their Waincoats and Bed-Posts with Oil-Colours, in which Mercury is mixed.

Of Butterflies there are as many Kinds as the Caterpillars, that produce them. Snails here resemble ours.

THE Cape-Scorpion is very dangerous, as they are numerous. It is usually about three Inches long, of dark Green, speckled with Black, much shaped like a Craw-Fish in every Part but the Tail, which is longer and narrower.

THEY have also a poisonous black Spider, of the Size of a Pea, which is very fatal in its Bite, if an Antidote is not timely used. In the Cape Colonies Moths do great Mischief to their Clothes, if not carefully prevented, and Waips are very troublesome in the Summer Seasons †.

THE Bite of the Cape-Millepedes is as mortal as that of the Scorpion. The Vines are pestered with a small Kind of Millepedes, called a *Sagger*, which, living in a Shell, resembling a withered Vine-Leaf, is hard to be found. Their Corn is also much infested with Weevils. 'Toads are not often to be seen at the Cape, and the *Hottentots* make no Difference between them and Frogs †.

* He does not tell us from whence he has given the Cut: So that *Tachard's* may be most exact of the two.

† *Kellin's Voyage*, vol. 1. p. 162, 159 pp.

† It is the same with *Francis's* Sea Horse.

† *Kellin*,

as before, p. 70, 159 pp.

What *Le Roy* says about the Cape-Toads, is quite ridiculous.

† *Kellin*,

as before, p. 77, and 184.

3. Birds and Fowl.

Eagles. The Flamingo. Wild Geese. The Knorhan. Spoon-Bill. Malaga, or Cape-Cormorant. Sea-Gulls. Penguins. Offriches. Fulcom. Pheasants. Edolin. Blue-Bird. Black-Birds. Wag-Tails. Cape-Finch. Bass. Goat-Snappers. Long-Tongue. Canary and other Birds. Wild Pigeon. Poultry.

Eagles.

THERE are three Sorts of Eagles seen at the Cape, but none of them differ much from those of Europe. One Kind, as large as a Goose, the Dutch call the *Dung-Bird*, from their tearing-out the Entrails of Beasts, which they attack an hundred in a Body. Another, which they call *Aquila Anataria*, or the *Duck-Eagle*, feeds chiefly on Ducks. A third Sort carry Tortoises aloft, and let them fall on the Rocks to break the Shell, whence called the *Offspring*, or *Bone-breaker*.

Flamingo

THIS *Flamingo* is one of the most distinguished of the Cape Birds. It is larger than a Swan, and the Neck longer, both Head and Neck as white as snow. The upper Mandible is crooked, and longer than the lower, over which it bends considerably: The nether is thicker and hollower. This Hollow is filled with the Tongue of the Bird, which is very large and fat. The Bill is furnished with short, sharp Teeth, black at the Point, the rest of a dark Blue. The lower Wing-Feathers are black, the upper of a high Flame-Colour: The Legs are Orange, and half as long again as those of a Stork. It is footed like the Goose. These Birds are numerous in the Cape Countries, keeping in the Day near the Lakes and Rivers, and retiring at Night to the Hills amongst the long Grass. Their Flesh is well-tasted and wholesome, and the Tongue eats like Marrow.

Wild Geese.

OUR wild Geese they have three Sorts. The Hill or Mountain-Goose larger than our tame Goose, the Wings and Head of a deep shining Green. The Crop-Goose, so called from the Largeness of its Crop, of which the common People make Pouches that will hold two Pound of Tobacco. The Water-Goose much like ours. The Flesh of all these is good, and they are so plenty, that the Cape European set no Value on tame Geese, and breed few.

A Bird peculiar to the Cape Countries, is called the *Knor-Cock*, the Female, *Knorhen*. These serve like Centinels to the other Fowls, by a loud Noise they make on seeing a Man, which resembles the Word *Crack*, and which they repeat very clamorously. This Bird is of the Size of a Hen, the Bill short and black, as are the Feathers on its Crown. The Body and Wings are mottled with red, white, and Ash-Colour: The Legs are yellow. The Wings are so small, that it cannot fly far. They frequent solitary Places, and build in Bushes, laying two Eggs. The Flesh is good, but not much esteemed. They have also, at the Cape, Water-Hens, Hawks very destructive to the Poultry, and Woodpeckers, but these last are scarce. Their Cranes and Crows are like ours. Those they call *Sea-Crows* are much esteemed both for their Flesh and Feathers. The Flesh of the Cranes, which are numerous, is black and tough.

HERE are also seen Pelicans. These of the Cape are bigger than a large Goose, with the same Kind of Neck, the Bill broad, long, and straight, ending in a Sort of Spoon. The Eyes are grey, and the Tail-Feathers about six Inches long. She feeds mostly on Serpents, Toads, and other venomous Animals. Hence the Cape *Ku-ropians* call her the *Serpent-Eater*, and none of them care to eat the Flesh.

THEY have at the Cape a Water Bird, which they call *Malaga*. It is of the Size of a Goose, the Bill shorter than a Duck's, with short, sharp Teeth: The Feathers curiously mottled with Black and White, with grey Specks. The Legs are shorter than a Duck, and nearer the Rump, so that it walks awkwardly. They live on Fish, and are excellent Divers.

SEA-GULLS, green, black, and grey, are very numerous at the Cape, and furnish the Inhabitants with excellent Feathers for Bedding. They resemble Ducks, except that their Bill is pointed. Their Eggs are delicate. The *Penguin*, or *Pinguin*, (so called, perhaps, from its being extremely fat) is a Cape Sea-Bird, much of the same Size with the former, only the Feathers are Ash-Colour, the Wing-Feathers very short, that she cannot fly, the Bill black, the Legs a pale Green. Its Eggs are highly valued, but the Flesh disesteemed. She builds her Nests on the Sea-Rocks.

* The *Phaenoptera*, Ray. See Willoughby, p. 320. Table 60. Ten Rhys's Description of this remarkable Bird is as good as none, for he only gives the Name of it.

The Name. The French call them *Flammant*.

The Author here seems to confound the Spoon-Bill, or *Spatula*-Bird, with the Pelican, which is a very different Bird, as may appear from their Figures which we have given, Vol. II. Plate XIX, and XXXI.

Kilburn's Voyage, vol. 2. p. 137. & 139. It is, probably, the Cormorant described by Willoughby, p. 320. Table 61. Rather than was originally called *Penguin* from the Multitude of those Birds which were found there.

REPTILES and BIRDS

The Crocodile or Horn Serpent, from Sackard.



The Hair Serpent, also Hood Serpent.



Horn Serpent from Kolben.

Birds from Kolben.



1713.
Kalen.
Parrot.
Gould.

THE *Cape* Peacock is like the *European*. Snipes are plentifully found here, as also Ravens, some wholly black, others grey, and others mottled.

PARTRICES are also so numerous, that they are seen every-where. They are easily tamed, many of them being kept in the *Cape* Fortress. Their Eggs are good eating, one containing the Quantity of thirty Hen-Eggs. If any-body but touch them, they forsake their Nests.

It is a vulgar Error, that they either leave their Eggs to be hatched in the Sand by the Heat of the Sun, or that they neglect their Young. They hatch them by sitting on them by Turns, as the Author had often observed. They are very fond of their Young, and take Care of them till they can take Care of themselves. When the *Officer* finds she cannot escape her Pursuer, she hides her Head where she can, and stands stock-still to wait the Event. *Kalen* often experienced their swallowing Pebbles and Pieces of Iron, which came through them in the same Condition they entered.

Falcon.
Pheasant.

THEIR Falcons and Pheasants resemble ours. The latter are very numerous. They will suffer a Man, behind a Picture of a Pheasant, to approach near enough to throw a Net over them. They are caught also by Springs made of Horse-hair, and placed conveniently. Their Owls differ only in the Colour. Wild Ducks they have in great Plenty, distinguished some with blue Heads, others with Head and Neck Feathers of a Chestnut Colour; some by very broad Bills, others by their Smallness. Their tame ones are larger than those of *Europe*.

Yellow.
Blue Bird.

Of small Birds they have at the *Cape* many Sorts. Their Yellow-Hammers and Larks differ not from those of *Europe*. They have a Bird, which in Size, Shape, and Colour, resembles our Cuckoo, but has gotten the Name of *Edolio*, from its articulately repeating that Word in a low, melancholy Tone. Many Whites at the *Cape* believe, that the Soul of a Boatwain who used that Word, and was murdered, passed into those Birds.

THE Green-Finch, or *Chloris*, is common here. They have a singular Bird, called the *Blue-Bird*, of the Bigness of our Starling; the Neck and Thighs covered with Feathers of a Sky-blue, those of the Back and Wings darker. The Bill is three or four Inches long, and pointed, the upper Mandible of a dark Red. Its Flesh is much valued.

THEY have three Sorts of Black-Birds; one like ours in Colour, with golden Bills; a second with brown, and a third Sort with reddish Feathers. Their Water-Wagtails are larger than ours, some with Ash-coloured, others with yellowish Feathers.

OF Finches they have many Sorts, but one is peculiar to the *Cape*. It is larger than a Chaffinch. In Winter the Feathers are all Ash-coloured: In Summer they get a new Plumage, the Head, Belly, Wings, and Tail, black; the Neck and Back a high Scarlet. The Bill is short, pointed, and yellow. They build their Nests of Cotton, divided into two Apartments, with one Entrance, in the upper of which lodges the Male, in the lower the Female.

THEIR Bats resemble ours. Of Titmouses they have a great Variety, chiefly distinguished by their Colours, and are good Song-Birds. The Gnat-Snapper, or Honey-Eater, feeds wholly on Flies, Bees, and Honey. His Bill is long, straight, and red, his Feathers blue, the Wings and Tail black. The Long-Tongue is a Bird larger than our Gold-Finch, the Belly-Feathers yellow, the rest speckled. The Tongue is long, and as hard as Iron, with a Point as sharp as a Needle, with which it pricks those who lay Hands on it.

CANARY Birds are very numerous, differing from ours only in Colour. They are very destructive to the Corn.

HERONS are also seen the *Serinus*, *Agithus*, the *Upupa*, or *Hoopoe*, the Stone-Pecker, Hawk-Finches and Starlings, all like the *European*. Their wild Pigeons differ from ours only in the Beauty and Variety of Colour; as do their Swallows, which are to be met here through all the Year, but are most numerous in the Winter Season. Their Sparrows, Thrushes, Quails, and Doves, all resemble ours.

WILD tame Fowls they are plentifully stocked, such as Cocks, Hens, Capons, and Turkeys, like the *European*, which are cheaper here than Butchers Meat.

SECT. IV.

Fish in the *Cape* Seas.

Blenny, Bennett, Brown-Fish, Kabeliaw, Dolphin, Dorado, Elft, Flying-Fish, Gold Fish, Herrings, Sharks, Pike and Brallien, Red-Stone Brallien, Pilot-Fish, Sea-Lion.

* The Description *Kalen* gives of this Bird agrees with that already inserted, Vol. II. p. 143.

Alpine and *Lepus* mountain Partridges, but as *Kalen* is silent, we may conclude there are none. *Ten Rhys* says, they are called *Edolio* & *Edolio* Pheasants, which his Translator calls, *Partridges red and grey*.

Kind, Vol. II. p. 358.

Kalen's Voyage, vol. I. p. 143, & seq.

See the Figure.

Kalen, as before, p. 152. & seq.

* Ten

Rhys says,

* See another

* See the Figure.

* *Kal-*

Porpoise.

Porpoise. Grampus. Thornback. Silver Fish. a long, scaled like a Herring, but that the Scales *Cape Fish.*
Stone-Brass. Flat-Nose. Selce. Tunny. are yellowish. The Back is blackish, the Belly
Cramp-Fish. Barbel. Rock-Fish. Eels. Sea- white, speckled with black, and divided Length-
Snail. Sea Sun and Stars. Pearl Snail. ways by a black Streak. It is dry, full of Bones,
Screw-Snail. The Paget. Sea-Shout. Mufel- and requires good Sauce. Its Spawn is highly
Crab. Land Tortoise. The Sea-Cow, or River- valued in several Parts.
Horse.

THE Seas near the *Cape* afford great Plenty and Variety of Fish. One Sort of these are called *Bleisure*, from its Faculty of blowing up itself in a globular Form. It is a smooth Fish without Scales, the Back of a dark Yellow, with a Cast of Transparency, the Belly white, the Mouth small, with four broad Teeth. It is not to be eaten, being of a poisonous Nature. A Fool-hardy Sailor, in *Kölsen's* Time, died of it.

ANOTHER *Cape-Fish* is the Bennet, about the Length and Thickness of a Man's Arm, and weighing from six to eight Pound. It is a beautiful Fish, has large Scales of a bright Purple, with Streaks of Gold. The Eyes and Tail are red, the Fins yellow. When the Scales are off, the Skin appears of a bright Purple. The Meat is of a crimson Colour, which it retains after it is boiled. It is divided into Lumps by Membranes, is dry Food, but easily digested, and agreeable to the Palate.

THE Brown-Fish is as large as the Body of an Ox, fifteen or sixteen Foot long, of a dark-grey Colour, and a great Destroyer of the Flying-Fish. There are several Kinds of *Kuhelino-Fish*. Those usually seen at the *Cape* are of an Ash-Colour, with large Scales, about two or three Foot long, with hard Fins. It is tender and delicate when fresh; when salted, is the usual Food of the *Cape-Slaves*.

THERE are several Sorts of Dolphins, which, for their Quickness in smelling and pursuing their Prey, may be stiled the King of Fish. The *Cape-Dolphin* has a wide Mouth, provided of a Bill somewhat like the Bill of a Goose. The Skin is quite smooth, without Scales; the Rows of Teeth small, hard, and sharp, and match like Tallies. The Tongue is long and fleshy. There is, near each Eye, a little Hole. The Colour on the Back is black, and the Belly white. It is from five to six Foot long. When salted some Days, it is good Food. There is another Kind of Dolphin, called by the *Negroes*, *Waraku Pesce*, and by the *Portuguese*, *Derado*, from the Gold Colour of its Skin. This is finer Meat than the Dolphin, whom, in all other Respects, it resembles.

In the *Table-Bay* they catch a Fish the *Dutch* call the *Eiff*, about three Fourths of a Yard

long, scaled like a Herring, but that the Scales are yellowish. The Back is blackish, the Belly white, speckled with black, and divided Lengthways by a black Streak. It is dry, full of Bones, and requires good Sauce. Its Spawn is highly valued in several Parts.

THE Flying-Fish are seen always in large Shoals, and frequently fly by Hundreds together. The Species of them differ only in Colour, and the Number and Structure of their Wings; some having two large Wings only, others two large and two smaller; others four long, narrow Wings, of the same Dimensions. *Kölsen* carefully examined all their Wings, and found them like to those of a Bat. Their Meat is excellent Food. They are never seen without the Tropics.

THE *Cape Gold Fish* is so called from a Circle of that Colour about each Eye, and a Gold Streak from his Head to his Tail. He is usually about a Foot and an half long, and weighs about a Pound. The Colour of his Meat is a Mixture of white and red. It is of a delicate Taste. The Gold Fishes are never seen at the *Cape* but from the Month of *May* to *August*, when they appear in Shoals.

HEERINGS are very plentiful at the *Cape*, differing to no Respect from ours; But the *Cape Europeans* have not got a right Method yet of preserving them, which would be a great Advantage, as the Herrings sent from *Holland* generally spoil before they reach the *Cape*.

In the *Cape Seas* are found two Sorts of Sharks, called by the *Cape Europeans*, *Hoggs*. The first is from twelve to sixteen Foot long. His Teeth, of which he has three Rows, are crooked, strong, and pointed. He has two Fins on his Back, one near the Head, the other about two Foot from the Tail; four large Fins on his Belly, situated in the same Manner. Between these, near his Tail, is a Slit. His Skin is rough and hard, without Scales, and has little Fishes clinging to it sucking.

THE other Sort of Sharks have the Head and Back much broader, and differ in their Teeth, of which they have six Rows. The Skin is as rough as a File, the Tail ends in Shape of an half Moon. A middling Shark, of the last Sort, is as much as two Horses can draw at a Stretch. *Kölsen* thinks it was the Shark, rather than the Whale, that swallowed *Jenai*.

THE *Cape-Pike* is only found in Salt Water, and resembles the *European* but in Colour, which is a dark Yellow. This Fish is much esteemed at the *Cape*.

THE *Brassem* is a Fish peculiar to the *Cape Seas*. The *Europeans* there call them the *Hec-*

* *Kölsen's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 186, & seq.
 Sucking-Fish, or *Rennier*, commonly called the *Rennier*.

See Plate II and III. Vol. I.

These are

1713.
Kolk.

seater Fish. Of these there are two Sorts: The first is rounder, broader and shorter than the other, of a blackish Colour on the Back and Side, but the Head of a dark Purple. The Colour of the other is dark Blue, speckled. It is seven or eight Inches long, and weighs a Pound. Both Kinds feed on Sea-Grass, Dung, and Offals. They are seldom taken with the Net, unless in bad Weather. They are wholesome and well-tasted. For Two-pence you may buy three or four.

Red-Stone
Bream.

THE *Cape Red-Stone Bream* is a beautiful Fish: The Skin and Scales red, spotted with blue, and in the Middle with Gold Colour: the Belly of a pale Red, the Eyes large and red, with each a silver Circle. They are esteemed at the *Cape* wholesome, nourishing Food, and of a fine Taste.

THIS Fish is called, at the *Cape*, *Jacob Ever-fish*, from a Master of a Ship of this Name, whose Face being remarkably red, and so deeply marked with the Small-Pox, that his black Beard, on the closest Shaving, appeared in the Seams, one of his Sailors gave his Name to the Fish, from the Resemblance it bore to his Face. The Allusion proved so just, that the Appellation was received both at the *Cape*, and in the *East Indies*, where *Jacob* was well known.

Pilot-Fish.

THE *Pilot-Fish* is so called from its being supposed the Shark's Guide. It is very difficult to take him. He is about five or six Inches long, of a dark Brown, speckled with Blue. There runs a black Streak along the Back, whence others proceed down the Sides. There is Gold Colour about the Eyes. The under Jaw is like a Saw, with which he usually fastens himself so closely to the Shark, that he cannot shake him off: But if the Shark be taken, the *Pilot-Fish* leaves him.

Sea-Lion.

A Sea-Lion was shot, basking on the Rocks in *Table-Bay*, in 1707: It measured about fifteen Foot long, and as many in Circumference. His Head much resembled that of a Lion in Shape, but had no Hair, nor had he either Hair or Scales on his Body. The Tongue was all Fat in a Manner, and weighed above fifty Pound. The Colour of his Skin was yellowish. Before he had two short Legs footed like a Goose. In the Place of hind Legs he had two broad Fins, each about eighteen Inches long: His Body tapered to a Tail, ending like an half Moon. He yielded several Barrels of Oil.

Porpoise,
Grampus.

PORPOISES, or Sea-Hogs, are seen in great Numbers, sometimes an hundred together, near the *Cape*: Also the lesser Whale, or Grampus. In 1707 and 1709, two deal ones were driven

ashore, one of fifty, the other of forty-five Foot long.

THE Thornback at the *Cape* is called *Rack*. Often above three hundred Eggs are found in the Bag. The whole Body has a Cast of Transparency. It is not much esteemed there. There is also a Fish something resembling it, called there a *Sand-Creeper*: It is larger, being about twelve Inches long, and nine broad; the Skin smooth, of a dark Brown, speckled with black. Though the *Cape Europeans* take many of these, they do not eat them.

THE Silver Fish is of the Size and Shape of a Carp of a Pound Weight, and resembles it in Taste. It is a very white Fish, with a Silver Tail, and Streaks of the same Colour down the Sides. They keep mostly at Sea.

THE Fish called, at the *Cape*, the *Stone-Braf*, *Stone-Bream*, nearly resembles a Carp, but is more delicate, and less bony. It is a firm Fish, from a Foot and an half to three Foot long, weighing from two to eight Pound. They vary from each other in Colour, except on the Back, which is brown. This Fish smells like Cod, eats well fresh or salted, and is very cheap. There are a Sort of them called *Flat-Noses*, on account of the Shape of their Heads. The Scales are large, and of a purple Colour. These are delicate Food, and much valued, as they are scarcer than the former.

THE *Cape*-Soles resemble ours, but the *Europeans* prize them much, as being easy of Digestion, and wholesome to cleanse the Blood. There are Tunnies in the *Cape*-Seas, but they are seldom caught. The Torpedo, or Cramp-Fish, is also taken at the *Cape*, and has been already described from this and other Authors.

BARRELS are found at the *Cape* in *Drakenstein* River only, but not so good as those in *Europe*. They have a Sort of Fish called *Rack-Fish*, being taken in the Holes of the Rocks, where the Tide lodges them. They are about six Inches long, and two round, of a very agreeable Taste. Their Eels, Lobsters, Crabs, and Oysters, in all Respects, resemble the *European*.

OF Sea-Snails there are a great Variety at the *Cape*, as the Porcupine-Snail, and Sea Porcupine-Snail. The Shell of this last is prickly. The *Kezil*, or Ninepin-Snail, the Shell beautifully spotted.

THE *Klip-Ausfen*, called also *Nabel-Snail*, have an upper and under Shell like the Muscle. Both are twisted, are very thick, and have a rough, crusty Matter on the Outside so curious, that it

¹ Kolk's Voyage, vol. 2. p. 190, & seq.

² See the Figure, which has no Resemblance of the Sweet-

Sea Sea Lion lately published.

³ See before, Vol. II. p. 364.

1713.

Köben.

Sea-Sun
and Stars.Pearl
Snail.Strom-
Snail.

The Pagger.

Sea-Spout.

Muschel-
Cruze.
Lobster.

appears to be the Effect of Art. This Crust dissolves in Vinegar, and when off, the Shell appears of a beautiful Pearl-Colour. This and the former is presented to Strangers as a Rarity.

SEA-SUNS and SEA-STARS: Their Shells are multangular and globular, covered with a thick, scaly Skin; and have Prickles on them shooting-out every Way like Rays of Light. Those of the Sea-Sun are longest. It also approaches nearer to a Globe, and is less than the Sea-Star.

THE most remarkable of these are the Pearl-Snails. When on the Surface of the Sea, their Shells serve them as Boats. They stretch their Heads far above them, and spreading-out a Sort of Sail, fall along in a very diverting Manner. When any Danger is near, they draw themselves in and sink at once. When the exterior Crust is removed by Vinegar, the Outfides of the Shells appear as bright as the Insides. They are used at the Cape as drinking Cups, some holding near a Quart. They are cast ashore by the Sea, but most of them broken.

THE Skrew-Snail is so called from its Shell being twisted: It is multangular, and has many Protruberances between the Angles. They are of different Shapes and Sizes. The principal Colour, when the Crust is off, is a fine Flame-Colour, curiously intermixed with white, red, green, and yellow.

THERE is, at the Cape, a Shell-Fish, to which, on account of the Caution required to handle it, the Portuguese first gave the Name of Pagger, (perhaps from the Latin, *Pace*.) It has on the Back a Prickle of so poisonous a Nature, as, without speedy Care, raises an Inflammation, which mortifies the Part.

THE Sea-Spout is also a singular Production of Nature here, appearing to the Eye like a Sponge, or Lump of Moss, which sticks so fast to the Rocks, that neither Wind nor Waves can move it. It is of a greenish Colour, and distils a watery Humour. Within there is a fleshy Substance, like a Gizzard. It discovers no Signs of animal Life, but that, on being touched, it ejects, from two or three small Holes, fine Streams of Water. This it repeats as often as you touch it, till its Store is spent.

THEY have at the Cape a smaller Kind of Lobsters, called *Muschel-Cruze*, which, besides the Coat-Shell, have another, which serves for an

House, but they never go so far out as to separate themselves from it.

Or the three Sorts of Tortoises, that only, called the *Lands-Tortoises*, is found at the Cape. The Flesh of these, which are plentiful here, is white, and of an excellent Taste. The Liver and Eggs are esteemed as Delicacies, but they are but small, not exceeding four Inches in Breadth. The Head and Feet are of a dark Colour. The Shell is so hard, that a loaded Cart-Wheel passing over her will not break it; and the Ossifrage-Eagle before-mentioned is forced to let her fall several Times on the Rocks before it can fracture the Shell sufficiently to come at the Flesh.

THE Sea-Cow at the Cape is somewhat of the Size and Colour of a Rhinoceros, but the Legs are shorter. The Head is not unlike that of the Horse, whence *Telick* and *Thevenot* call it the *Sea-Horse*, but it is broader and shorter, and the Mouth larger, like that of an Ox. From the Nostrils, which are large, she spouts Water when she rises from the Sea or River. Her Eyes and Ears are small, her Legs short, round, and all of the same Thickness. Her Hoofs are not cloven, but quartered or crosed at the Bottom by two small Channels. The Tail is short like the Elephant's, but has less Hair, which yet is all she has on her Body. The Udder of the Female is small, but, like that of the Cow, between the hind Legs. *Köben* often saw the Female suckle her Young, which were about the Size of Sheep. Her Skin is an Inch thick, and very tough. She has four remarkable Teeth on the nether Jaw, which shoot-out a considerable Way from the Mouth. There are two on each Side, one crooked, the other straight. They are all the Size of an Ox's Horn, about a Foot and an half long, extremely white, and about ten Pound Weight. These are more valued than Ivory, as they never lose their Colour. The Sea-Cow never comes ashore but to feed. She has an exquisite Smell, and by that can discover a Man or any Enemy at a great Distance. Her Flesh is much admired at the Cape, and sells sometimes from twelve to fifteen Pence a Pound. The Fat is equally esteemed with Butter in Sauce, and is often spread upon Bread. *Köben* agrees with *Bechart* and *Ludolf*, in taking the Sea-Cow, to be the Behemoth of *Job*.

* *Köben's Voyage*, vol. 2. p. 198, & *seq.*

† *See Rhyn* does the same, but gives no Description of it. *Martin*, *Nicobuff*, and *Frankfort*, call it the *Sea-Cow*. *Köben* allows, it is the *Hippopotamus*, or *River-Horse*. In his Cut of it, no Teeth appear, as there do in those given by *Ludolf*, *Businus*, *Labat*, and others.

* *Köben*, as before, p. 199, & *seq.*



1720.
Hamilton.

C H A P. VI.

SOME REMARKS on the Maritime Countries and Islands between the Capes of Good Hope and Guarda Fuy.

By Captain Alexander Hamilton.

Preamble.

AS the Eastern Coast of Africa is but little known to the European Nations, in Comparison of the Western, (none of them having any Settlements or fixed Commerce there, except the Portuguese, and these but few) we can add but little to the Description, which has been already given of the Countries situate along the same, in our Account of the Progress of the Portuguese Arms in their first Voyages to the East Indies, farther than to lay before the Reader some Informations concerning the modern State of those maritime Parts, taken from Captain Hamilton^a; together with an Account of *Sesala* and *Mamotapa*, such as the Portuguese Historians have transmitted to us from the Relations of their Voyagers and Adventurers, when their Power was most considerable in those Parts of Africa.

a *test*, and Crocodiles. Here lived, in 1718, a penitent Pirate, who sequestered himself from his abominable Community, and retired out of Harm's Way.

THERE is no Commerce on the Coast between *Natal* and *del Agoa*, probably for the above Reason; and the Author believes, the first Trade the *English* had to either Place came by Accident: For about the Year 1683, an *English* Ship, called the *Jahanna*, having been lost somewhere about *del Agoa*, the Natives, who were reputed great Barbarians, shewed the shipwrecked Men much more Civility and Humanity than some Nations who pretend to much Religion and Politeness; for they accommodated their Guests with Necessaries, and assailed to save Part of the damaged Cargo at very moderate Rates. For a few Glass Beads, Knives, Scissers, Needles, Thread, and small Looking-Glasses, they hired themselves to carry such Things as were saved to a neighbouring Country, providing Victuals into the Bargain; and having conducted them above two hundred Miles on their Way, procured new Guides and Porters for a Journey of seven or eight hundred Miles farther, which they travelled in forty Days. These delivered their Charge to others, who conducted and provided for them till they arrived at the Cape of Good Hope. Some of the *English* falling sick on the Way, they carried them in Hamocks till they either recovered or died, which happened but to three or four, out of eighty Men^b.

THIS Account the Captain had from one of the Travellers, who told him, that the natural Fertility of those Countries made the Inhabitants indolent, lazy, and simple. Their Rivers are abundantly stored with good Fish and Water-Fowl, besides *Mamotapa*, or Sea-Cows^c, and Crocodiles; their Woods with large Trees, wild Cattle and Deer, Elephants, Rhinoceroses, Lions, Tygers, Wolves, and Foxes; also many Sorts of winged Fowls and Birds, besides Ostriches. The Natives^d have some Notion of a Deity, whom they worship with Dancing and Feasting, for they are generally very much inclined to

S E C T. I.

The Maritime Countries between the Capes of Good Hope and Guarda Fuy.

Tierra de Natal. *Del Agoa. Humanity of the Natives. The Country and Inhabitants. Rhinoceros Horns. Country of Sena. Mozambik. The Inhabitants. Quiloa. Mombasa. Patta. Magadoca. English seized there. Coast of Zeyla. The Inhabitants. The Sheep there. Mount Felix. Abyssin Coast.*

Tierra de
Natal.

FROM the Cape of Good Hope to *Tierra de Natal*, is a dangerous Sea-Coast, and little frequented, owing either to the Unsociableness of the *Hottentots*, who inhabit it, or Want of Commodities worth venturing for. However, Captain Hamilton had known some *English* Vessels go from *India* to *Natal* for Elephants Teeth, and made pretty good Profit, but they were two Years and an half in performing a Voyage. The Country is fertile, but unwholesome, the Woods thick set with several Sorts of Trees, and stored with Elephants, Lions, Leopards, Bears, Wolves, Deer, and Foxes; the Rivers with Fish, *Man-*

^a In his New Account of the East Indies, in two Volumes, Octavo, published in 1726.
^b See Hamilton's New Account of the East Indies, vol. 1. p. 5, 2^d page.
^c These must be *Hottentots*.

^d This is the true Sea-Cow, and very different from *Kishes*'s.

1740.
Rhinoceros.

Mith, an Instance whereof the Author relates from a Master of a Ship, who went thither to trade in *Amu* 1718. The Natives being assembled in good Numbers to traffic, near the Place where his Vessel lay in a certain River, an arch Indian Youth carried his Drum ashore, and in a Thicket, pretty near the Assembly, beat it very briskly. On this, the Young of both Sexes fell a skipping, and a little after the Old followed their Example: But the latter beginning to tire, some went to the Drummer, and presenting him with Eggs, Fowl, and Fruits, intreated him to leave-off, which as soon as he did, they all set-down again on the Ground well heated.

Rhinoceros.
Horns.

THE Author saw several Rhinoceroses Horns brought from this Coast to *Bombay*, which were longer than any he ever saw either in *India*, or *China*. One had three Horns growing from the same Root, the longest was about eighteen Inches, the second twelve, and the third eight, but smaller in Proportion than the *Indian*, and much sharper about the Point. The Master of the above-mentioned Ship brought also a black Fowl, as big in the Body as a large Duck. It had a long, straight, thick, but pointed Bill, and hollow Eyes; its Legs about twelve or fourteen Inches long, but thick and strong: It was very voracious after Flesh or Fish, and was an excellent Frog and Rat-Catcher. As soon as he caught any living Game, he tossed it up about two Yards high, and caught it on the Point of his Bill, repeating his Tossings till the Animal died.

BETWEEN *del Agoa* and *Mozambik* is a dangerous Sea-Coast, formerly known by the Name of *Sofala* and *Quama*, but now by the *Portuguese*, *Sena*. It lies Dominions for many different Princes, for they are contented with small Territories. The Inhabitants are all Negroes and Infidels, except a few, whom the *Portuguese* have converted to Popery; and these, by their Conversion, are generally less humane to *European* Strangers than the rest.

Country of
INDIA.

SEN A abounds in Elephants Teeth and low Gold, of eighteen or nineteen Carats Finess, but the People having Plenty of all Things convenient for them, are very supine. They have large, strong Bodies and Limbs, and are very bold in War. They will trade with none but the *Portuguese*, who keep a few Priests along the Sea-Coasts to over-awe the silly Natives, and get their Teeth and Gold for Trifles, which they send to *Mozambik*.

A *Portuguese*, who went from *Mozambik* to *Sena*, told the Author, that carrying some small Glass Beads of divers Colours for Traffic, the Natives made a Hole in the Ground, which they

filled with Gold Dust, for the same Measure of Beads: Also, that they would barter an Elephant's Tooth for so much coarse chequered Cloth, called *Kanboyen* *Loeji's*, as it measured: But the *Portuguese* Reports, says the Author, are hardly to be credited; for if Gold and Teeth were so easily purchased, how could they be so miserably poor as they are every-where in their Colonies all over *India*? He believes, that this was the *Ophir*, or *Tarshish*, whither *Salomon* sent his Ships out of the *Red-Sea*, rather than *Su-matra*, where they could not possibly go and return in three Years along the Sea-Coasts.

East-
Coast.

MOZAMBIK is an Island belonging to the *Mozambik*. Crown of *Portugal*. It is well fortified both by Art and Nature, but is very unwholesome; inasmuch, that when any *Reynal*, or *European Portuguese* in *India*, commits any capital Crime, instead of punishing him according to their national or martial Laws, he is banished thither for as many Years as the Vice-Roy of *Goa* and his Council shall order, and very few ever return from their Exile: for five or six Years is a long Life here. It also serves for a refreshing Place for the *Portuguese* Ships bound from *Europe* to *India*. Here they generally stay about thirty Days to recover their Soldiers and Seamen; who, by their Inactivity and Laziness at Sea, contract the Scurvy and Dropsy, which the acid Fruits and nourishing Roots soon dissipate. Their Ships are generally the whole Month of August in their Passage between *Mozambik* and *Goa*.

THE Inhabitants of *Mozambik*, as well as the *Indians* those on the Continent, are all Negroes of a large Size, handsome, very well limbed, and make good Slaves. The King's Ships, as well as private Traders, bring good Store of them to *India*, both Sexes being in high Esteem with the *Indian Portuguese*. As soon as the Boys can speak a little *Portuguese*, they are baptized, and so become very zealous Catholics, fit to execute any base Design their ghostly Fathers shall think fit to put them on; and after Baptism, they have a little Crucifix, or a Saint of Brass or Ivory, hung about their Necks, which they are as fond of, as a Monkey is of a Kitten to play with. Some, who have the good Fortune to fall into the Hands of a zealous, superstitious Master, are brought-up to Letters, and in the End come to be Priests, many of whom the Author knew about *Goa*.

THE Country of *Quilba* lies between *Mozambik* and *Mombasa*. Its Sea-Coast is dangerous, which admits of no Trade but in Boats.

MOUMBASS (or *Mombasa*) is also an Island that lies near the Continent, about two hundred and twenty-five Leagues from *Alexandria*. It is

Quilba.
Mombasa.

* In the Original, *Sofala*, and *Caama*.
New Account of the *East-Indies*, vol. 1. p. 7, & seq.

b In the Original, *Barbarians*.

c See *Hanslow's*

Plan and Map of
the
FORT OF
QUILLOA.



CHARRIS.

Vol. II. Pl. 58. P. 368. also Vol. II. Pl. 59.

1720. slightly fortified by Art, but very well by Nature. It belonged to the *Portuguese* for near two hundred Years; but in 1698, the *Muskat Arabi* took it with very little Trouble, and put about twenty *Portuguese*, who were there to defend it, to the Sword. The Conquerors found a Booty of about two hundred Tons of Teeth, which was worth in *India*, one hundred twenty-five thousand Pound Sterling. The Elephants of this Country are very large, and so are the Men, who are all Infidels, except those who were near Neighbours to the *Portuguese*, who, for Convenience, became *Papists*: But since the *Arabians* became their Neighbours, they are turned very zealous *Moslems*; which Religion pleases them better, as supporting their dear Custom, Polygamy and Concubinage.

PATA is now also in the Hands of the *Muskat Arabi*, and affords good Store of Teeth and Slaves for *Muskat*. Formerly the *English*, *Portuguese*, and *Moori* from *India*, had a small but advantageous Trade thither; but the *Arabs* envying their Gain, sent a Colony about the Year 1692, which settled there, and prohibited Commerce with all other Nations. The inland Countries are inhabited by Infidels: But on the Sea-Coasts of *Magadaxa*, *Zeyla*, and *Taman*, to Cape *Guarda Fuy*, which stretches about three hundred and thirty Leagues North-Eastward, the established Religion is the *Mohammedan*; yet every Country retains some Fragments of their ancient Customs, Ceremonies, and Traditions. The *Arabs* from *Mecca*, and other Parts of *Arabia the Happy*, who have taken great Pains to keep them fringed, declare them to be the greatest Schismatics and most odidate Heretics breathing.

MAGADOXA, or, as the *Portuguese* call it, *Magadicia*, is a pretty large City, about two or three Miles from the Sea, from whence it makes a very fine Appearance, being adorned with many high Steeples and Moscs. This Port is not frequented for two Reasons: First, all along the Shore, about a Mile from the sandy Strand, there lies a Reef of Rocks. The Channel between is pretty smooth, and two or three Fathoms Water; but there is no River to secure Vessels when a strong Sea-Wind bloweth. The second Impediment is, that Violence and Robberies are so much practised and countenanced, that common Faith is not to be relied on. On this Occasion, the Author relates a very tragical Instance of their Barbarity.

In 1700, the *English* new *East-India* Company's Ship, called the *Albion*, commanded

by Captain *William Baines*, bound for *Shetland*, having had the Misfortune to meet the easterly Monsoons, or Trade-Winds, sooner than was expected, which drove him towards the Coast of *Magadaxa*, he went and harboured on the South-West Side of the Island of *Tobanna*, till they were blown over. In *March*, he ventured to put to Sea: But the Season being too early he fell in a gale with *Magadaxa*; whose handsome Appearance from Sea inducing him to believe it to be some Place of Commerce, he sent his Yawl ashore, with his Purser and four Seamen, to bring Information; giving them strict Orders to be on their Guard, and to let only one Person go ashore at a Time. When the Boat got over the Rocks, they anchored close to the Beach, and the Natives came from the Town, driving Store of Cattle and Sheep before them for Sale. The Purser, being young and unexperienced, forgot his Orders, and went ashore with three of his Crew, leaving only one to stay in the Boat. Those who went ashore were likewise so silly as to leave their Fire-Arms behind, and (dazzled by the feigned Civilities that were shewed them) mingle themselves with the Natives, who, finding so unexpected an Opportunity, hurried them away to the Town; and the Boatkeeper, ignorant of what had happened to his Comrades, suffered some of the Blacks to come into the Boat, who seized him also, and hauled the Boat a good Way upon the Land.

Those on board the Ship, saw, by their Prospectives what was acted ashore, and sent their other Boats, well-manned, to try if they could ransom the Captives. They staid four Days, but could never bring the Natives to a Parly, and so the Ship was obliged to leave them to repent of their Folly; nor was it ever known in *India* what became of them.

Yet, on the Coasts of *Zeyla* and *Taman*, *Zeyla Island*, which both terminate at Cape *Guarda Fuy*, the Natives will bring-off Sheep, Goats, Hens, Fish, and Fruits, to sell to Shipping that sometimes lie becalmed on their Sea near the Shore. The People are tall, meagre, and large-boned; very swarthy, but not quite black. They are treacherous, cruel, and avaricious in their Temper. Their Habit is a Pair of Breeches to their Ankles, or a Piece of coarse Cloth about their Loins, and a Gown open before, and without Sleeves, called a *Kandin*: It is made of Camel's Hair, or of their Sheep's Wool, which is full as hard and coarse as Hog's Hair. On their Heads they wear a Turban of coarse Calico, and then they are equipped.

* *Pata*, or *Patt*.
Taman.

* It should be *Ajan* rather: for *Taman*, or *Taman*, is in *Arabia*.
Rather, *Magadicia*: for so they pronounce *Magadaxa*.

* *Ajan*, we presume.
THE END

1720.

Hamilton.

Ship.

THREE Sheep are all white, with jet-black Heads and small Ears; their Bodies large, and their Flesh delicate. Their Tails as broad as their Buttocks, and about six or eight inches long, so they are in the Shape of a Pillow wanting Corners; and from the lower End of that Bundle comes a small Tail about six inches long, almost like a Pig's.

Mount

Trix.

FROM Cape Guarda Fuy to Zeyla is about an hundred and twenty Leagues. The Coast is inhospitable as well as the People. There are only two Places in all this Tract which affords fresh Water: One is a little to the Eastward of Mount Felix, called in Arabic, *Baba Fild*, or, *The Mountain of Camels*, where there is a small fresh Water River; the other is called *Khoji*, ten Leagues more westerly: It may be easily known by the Side of a Hill close to the Sea, whose North Aspect is of white Sand, that shews at a Distance like a Sail, but may be seen in that Figure ten Leagues off. Several Ships from India, that have been necessitated to call at those Places for Water, have been cut-off. One they surprized with her own Boat, which was sent for Water: They came unware on the Boat's Crew, while they were filling their Casks, and having killed them all except two Boys, they then came off at Night with the Boat. Those in the Ship not having examined them in Time, they boarded her and took them all unarmed: They killed every Man, and carrying the Vessel close to the Shore, unladed and then sunk her. The two Youths who gave the Account were brought to *Aden*, which lies opposite to that Place, and sold for Slaves: But a *Sarat* Ship happening to be there, the Captain bought them and carried them to India.

Abdullah.

THERE is no anchoring on that Coast above a Mile off Shore, the Sea is so deep. Beyond Zeyla, within the *Red-Sea*, in a deep Bay opposite to *Baselmandel*, there is a large River; but, though the Mouth be wide, yet it is deep and full of Banks and Rocks, with such Whirlpools that no Ship dare go near it. At that River begins the *Shiffa* Shore, which extends to *Zuckin* (or *Suakin*) two hundred Leagues distant, and shews many high Mountains, easily seen from the *Arabian* Coast.

S E C T. II.

A brief Description of the Islands in the Ethiopian Seas.

Madagascar: The Pirates there. St. Mary's Har-

bour, Malacarenhar, or Bourbon Isle. The Komora Isles. Johanna. Captain Maccreagh felt the Pirates there. Mobilla and Mayetta. The Charts destitute. Komora Isles: Their Site. Johanna: Soil and People: Elong and near-like. Prodigious large Tree. Caution against Pirates.

Edm-
G.

MADAGASKAR, or, as the Portuguese christened it, *St. Lawrence*, is one of the largest Islands in the known World, and affords most of the Requisites of Life. It produces very large Cattle, whose Flesh is excellent, especially their large Humps that grow between their Neck and Shoulders. They have also Goats and Deer plenty enough. The Portuguese, at their first Landing on this Island, left a Brood of Hogs there, which have mightily increased: They also gave Names to many Rivers and Cape-Lands that are not now frequented by Ships, but serve as Nests to Pirates. The French made a Settlement on the East Side of it, and called it *Pert Dauphin*; but finding that the Commerce there would not bear the Expence of the Colony, they left it again.

THE English formerly drove a Trade for the Pirates Slaves on the West Side of the Island, particularly at *St. Augustine's Bay*, and at new and old *Messing*; but now they are afraid of the Pirates, against whom several Squadrons of British Men of War have been sent to cruise without Success. But a single Ship, commanded by one *Mil-lar*, did more than all the chargeable Fleets could do: For with a Cargo of strong Ale and Brandy, which he carried to sell them in 1704, he killed above five hundred of them by carousing; though they took his Ship and Cargo as a Present from him, and his Men entered, most of them, in the Society of the Pirates.

It was reported in India, and affirmed to the Author by a Pirate in *Bengal*, that Commodore Littleton had some of that Gang on board the *Argesley* at *Madagaskar*; but that, for some valuable Reasons, he let them go again: And because they found Difficulty in cleaning the Bottoms of their large Ships, he generously assisted them with large Blocks and Tackle-sails for ca-reening them.

MADAGASKAR is invironed with Islands, *St. Mary's* and dangerous Shoals, both of Rocks and Sand. *St. Mary's*, on the East Side, is the Place which the Pirates first chose for their Asylum, having a good Harbour to defend them from the Weather, though, in going-in, there are some Difficulties: But bearing that Squadrons of English

¹ Hamilton's New Account of the East Indies, vol. 1. p. 11, & seq.

² Hamilton, as before p. 25, & seq.

³ See Vol. I. p. 265.

⁴ Felix seems to be a Corruption of *Fild*.

⁵ Is the South East End of the Island.

Ships

1720.
Hamilton.

Ships were come in Quest of them, they removed to the main Island for more Security, and there they have made themselves free Denizens by Marriage: And the Author is of Opinion, that it will be no easy Matter to dispossess them. In 1722, Mr. Mathews went in Search of them, but found they had deserted Dr. Mary's Island, leaving behind them some Marks of their Robberies, for in some Places they found Pepper a Foot thick on the Ground. The Commodore went with his Squadron over to the main Island, but the Pirates had carried their Ships into Rivers, or Creeks, out of Danger of the Men of War; and to burn them with their Boats would have been impracticable, since they could have easily distressed their Crews out of the Woods. The Commodore had some Discourse with several of them, but they stood on their Guard ready to defend themselves, in case any Violence had been offered them.

Mascare-
nada, or
Bourbon off.

THE Island of *St. Apolloni* is uninhabited, that of *Mascareen* is peopled by the *French*, but formerly by the *English*, who called it the *English Parish*. *Mauritius* was formerly inhabited by the *Dutch*, but in 1703 they had Orders to leave it, and repair to *Batavia*. *Diego Reis*, which is the next Island to *Mauritius*, was made a *French* Settlement, but finding it barren, they left it in three Years; all the rest of the Islands, as well to the Eastward as the Northward, have remained uninhabited, excepting three or four to the Westward, which lie in the Channel between *Zeila* and *Madagascar*.

Komora.
Johanna.

KOMORA, which is the Westmost of those inhabited Islands, affords nothing but a scripp Maintenance for a Parcel of poor miserable Creatures. *Jehanna* is within Sight of *Komora*, and has Plenty of Cattle, Goats, Fowls, and Fish, with good Lemons and Oranges, so that most *English* Ships bound to *Mekha*, *Persia*, and *Surat*, called there for Refreshments, till the Pirates began to frequent it.

JOHANNA is remarkable for two Misfortunes which befel the *English East India Company's* Shipping. The first was in the Year 1690 or 91, when Captain *Burton* in the *Herbert*, a Ship of eight hundred Tons, mounting fifty-six Guns, was attacked by three *French* Ships, each gunned and manned as well as his. On their Approach he cut his Cables, and put to Sea. About two, in the Afternoon, they began an hot Engagement, which lasted till eight in the Night, when the *Herbert* blew-up, only six or seven of her Men, who were in the Pinnace, being saved. The other happened in 1720. Two of the Company's Ships, with an *Offender*, watering there,

they agreed to stand by one another in case of being attacked by the common Enemy: But when the two Pirates drew near, the *Greenwich* and *Offender* weighed and stood to Sea, and left the *Cassandra* to shift for herself. She was obliged to engage the smallest Pirate (being a Ship of twenty-four Guns, *Dutch* built) in the Bay: But soon after the Fight began, she went aground on some Rocks; and the Pirate (striking to board her, was also taken-up by other Rocks not above twenty Yards distant. The Pirate's Head lay towards the *Cassandra's* Broad-side, and thus they pelted one another furiously, many falling on both Sides; but at length the Pirates, finding too hot Work on their Decks, were forced to run-down in the Hold for Shelter. Captain *Mac-* *English the*
raw, who commanded the *Cassandra*, seeing the other Pirate approach near him, and manning all his Boats to reinforce his Comrade, thought it a good Time for him and his Men to get ashore in their Boats. The Inhabitants shewed much Humanity to the Distressed, and carried them above a dozen Miles up the Country, for fear the Pirates, in their mad Fury, should have murdered them. Soon after they had taken Possession of the *Cassandra*, they got her afloat again, she having received little or no Damage. They also got their own Ship off, but she was very much shattered and disabled in her Mast.

CAPTAIN *MACRAW*, being a Gentleman who knew how to suit his Conversation to Men of all Tempers, ventured on-board the Pirates, and they were so much taken with his Address, that they made him a Present of that Ship which he had so bravely battered, to carry him and his Crew to *India*: Mean-while, the *Greenwich* brought the Account of the Loss of the *Cassandra* to *Bombay*, where she arrived in *September*, and in *November* Captain *Macraw* arrived himself with his Company all in Rags; but they were soon equipped by the Benevolence of Governor *Bacon*, who was a Gentleman of as much Honour and good Sense as any who ever sat in that Chair.

MOHILLA is but a little distant from *Jehanna*, pretty well inhabited, but the People not so well civilized as those of *Jehanna*. The Kings of these neighbouring Islands have continual War. The *Jehanna* Men, by the Assistance of Commodore *Littleton*, landing on *Mohilla*, made great Slaughter and Devastations; but it is hard to say what his Policy was in breaking the Neutrality that the *English* held among these Islanders. *Madagatta* lies about thirty-five Leagues from *Jehanna*, and is the largest of the inhabited Islands: But being surrounded with dangerous Rocks under

Mohilla and
Madagatta.Captain
Maccreagh

* Who call it, *Beardon*. See Chart 5. Vol. I.
Chart 5. Vol. I. Or, *Agnan*, of which *Johanna* seems to be the Corruption.

* It is called by the *French*, the *Isle of France*. See
Rather, *Mac Creagh*.
Water.

1720. Water, it is not much frequented, and so the a
 Manners of the Inhabitants are not so well
 known. The Religion of those Islands is Mi-
 hammedan, but there are few Zealots among
 them.

The Charts
exhibited THE Navigation of the *Ethiopian* Seas is very
 dangerous, and the Charts very defective; for a
Dutch Skipper, who had Orders to sail from Ba-
 tavia to the North-End of *Madagascar*, and from
 thence to the *Red-Sea*, told the Author at *Makha*,
 that he saw several large Islands, and many Rocks b
 and Sands in those Seas, that were not placed in
 his Charts, for which Reason he was obliged to
 anchor in the Nights, when he could have An-
 chor Ground: Likewise that the Current ran very
 strong to the Southward among those Banks and
 Rocks *.

The following Remarks on the Island of Johanna
are given us by Captain Henry Cornwall.

Komora
Isle, their
city. THE Latitude of *Johanna* is twelve De-
 grees North, that of *Mayetta* thirteen De-
 grees. This last Island is generally seen first by
 those who come the inward Passage from the
 Southward, and makes like three Islands at first
 Sight, with a Peak on the Southermost. It lies
 South-East about eighteen Leagues from *Johanna*.
 You will likewise see *Mohilla*, which lies West
 South-West ten Leagues from *Johanna*, and the
 Island *Komora* North-East. The Author gives d
 this Account to prevent Mistakes, several Persons
 having taken one Island for the other. In enter-
 ing *Johanna*, he lost about *Saddle* Island, which
 lies at the West End.

Johanna.
Soil and
People. *YOHANNA* is pleasantly intermixed with
 Hills and Valleys, both very fertile and yielding
 Store of good Provisions of all Sorts; the Valleys
 affording good Food for Cattle, and the Hills a-
 bounding in Fruits.

The Inhabitants are a tawny Race of *Arabs*, e
 intermixed with some *Ethiopian* Women, who
 are quite black. They are an indolent, slothful
 People, not without a Mixture of Pride, which

makes them despise any mean Employment,
 chusing, like our North-Country Highlanders,
 rather to starve and go naked, than work. The
 greatest Labour they are willing to put them-
 selves to, is grinding down a Hoop, or other Bit
 of Iron, into a Knife, Goad, or any little Ne-
 cessary: However, they make a Shift to keep *Money* and
 themselves honest, (a rare Virtue in that Part of
 the World) but, perhaps, more out of Fear
 than Inclination. They affect the *English* very
 much, to whom they shew Abundance of awk-
 ward Civilities. Their Speech is *Arabic*, and
 their Religion (if any they have) the *Moham-*
medan.

THE Women here (as all in *India*) are Slaves
 to their Husbands. The Men are of a bold,
 warlike Disposition, as may be observed from
 their continual quarrelling with those of *Mo-*
hilla.

THE Island is well watered with little Brooks,
 but boasts of few or no large Rivers, and has
 been formerly subject to and inhabited by the
Portuguese, as some old Ruins and a large thick
 Wall, after their Manner of building, testifies.

THE chief Thing which deserved the Author's *Prodigious*
large Tree. Notice, was a Tree of a very peculiar Nature,
 having a Body of more than eight Foot Circum-
 ference. It seemed to be a Complication of many
 small Trees incorporated into one great Stem,
 bearing a Leaf not much unlike that of an Ivy.
 It stands by the Rivulet where fresh Water is
 taken-in; and is held in great Admiration by the
 Natives, who expose dead Bodies of their Male-
 factors under it for a Terror to their Slaves and
 others.

THE Captain would advise all Ships, touching *Cape* at
 this Port, to be very cautious of mentioning *any* Pi-
 whither they are bound, by Reason the *European*
Pirates repair hither constantly, to learn what
 Ships are in those Seas, their Strength, Loading,
 and Port destined to: So that he thinks it is the
 safest Way for those who fear those Rovers not
 to make this Island in their Passage to the *Malla-*
bar Coast, if they can avoid it *.

* *Hamilton's New Account of the East Indies*, vol. 1. p. 16, & seq.
 several Voyages to *India*, 1720, p. 12.

* *Cornwall's Observations on*



C H A P. VII.

An Account of the Empire of Monomotapa.

S E C T. I.

Barreto's Expedition for the Conquest of the Gold and Silver Mines.

Barreto sets out. Comes to Monomotapa. Invades Mongas. The Enemy appear. The Capital taken. Device to get Provisions. Barreto dies; Homem succeeds, and marches forward: Arrives at the Mines. Policy of the Kafis. The Portuguese destroyed.

Barreto sails.

WHEN Francis Barreto returned to Portugal, after having been Governor of India, he was appointed Admiral of the Galleys: He exercised his Command at the Time of that memorable Action of *Pinnen*, by which he gained great Reputation. Being come back to *Lisbon*, the King named him for the Government of *Monomotapa*, (one of the three into which he had divided that of *India*, then too great for one Man) with the additional Title of Conqueror of the Mines there. The great Inducement to this Conquest, was the Information and Experience of the vast Quantity of Gold found within the Limits of this great Empire, particularly at *Manika* in the Kingdom of *Boharango*. Barreto sailed from *Lisbon* in April 1569 with three Ships and one thousand Landmen. Among these were many Gentlemen and old African Soldiers. Being come to *Mozambique*, he went to subdue the King of *Pate*, (or *Patta*) who was revolted from the Portuguese.

BARRETO had Orders not to undertake any thing without the Advice of *Francis de Menclares*, a Jesuit, who was the Cause of the ill Success of this Enterprize. So great an Error it is to subject a Soldier to a religious Man: So indelicate a Presumption for a religious Man to undertake what does not belong to his Profession. There were two Ways to the Mines, the one through *Monomotapa*, the other by *Zisala*: Barreto was for this, *Menclares* for the other, and carried it, notwithstanding all the Votes to the contrary.

Came to Monomotapa.

THE Governor set out from *Mozambique* with more Vessels and Men than he brought, besides Tools, Camels, Horfes, and other Necessaries for War, and for the Work of the Mines. Having

failed ninety Leagues, he went up the River *Cuama*, (or *Quama*) called by our first Discoverer, *de las Buenas Sennales*: He came to *Sosa*, or Fort *St. Marçal*, as *Menclares* desired, and repaired the Town *Inaparapala*, which is near to another of the *Misri*, who began to undermine the Portuguese Defigns, as they had formerly done in *India*: They attempted to poison their Army, and some Men and Horfes did die; but the Cause being discovered by one of them, the rest were all put to the Sword, and the chief of them torn to Pieces at the Mouths of *Guna*, except one, (called *Mahomet Jume*) who affirming the blessed Virgin had appeared to him, and commanded him to become a Christian, by the Name of *Lawrence*, he had the Favour to be strangled.

BARRETO sent an Ambassador to the Emperor, who for the more Honour admitted him to his Presence; not as other Ambassadors were treated at this Court, which is to go without Arms, barefooted, on their Knees, and when they come near, prostrating themselves on the Ground. The Purport of the Embassy was to desire Leave to punish the King of *Mongas*, who was in Rebellion, and go-on to the Mines of *Butua* and *Manchika*: The first Part was a Piece of a Flattery to obtain the second, because the Lands of *Mongas* lie between *Sosa* and the Mines, and it was necessary to make Way with the Sword. His Majesty consented to all, and offered one hundred thousand Men, but Barreto accepted not of them.

He marched ten Days with twenty-three Horfes, and five hundred and sixty Mulketeers, (enduring much by Hunger and Thirst) for the most Part along the River *Zambaze*, over whose most rapid Stream hang Pieces of the high Mountain *Lupata*, ninety Leagues distant from the *Ethiopian* Sea. At the End of this tedious March they began to discover Part of the Enemy, and soon after saw the Mountains and Valleys covered with armed Men. The Governor was not daunted, but seeing it was hard to discover the End of that Multitude, he drew-up and gave the Van to *Vasco Fernando Homem*. He had the Rear himself, and between the Bodies was the Baggage and some Field Pieces. When they came to charge, he removed the Cannon to the Front and Flanks. The Enemy advanced in Form of an half

* De Faria's Portuguese Asia, vol. 2. p. 240, & 399.

1569.

The Fama.

Moon. Before they engaged, an old Woman, who was a notorious Witch, (if you will believe our Author) stepped forward and scattered some Powder towards *Barreto's* Men, having persuaded the Enemy that the Powder alone would gain the Victory.

had died, or should die. It is certain that *Barreto's* was not the Promoter of that Expedition, and *Menceras* was in Fault for all the Misfortune that had been committed; however, this great Man took the Jesuit's Insolence to much to Heart, that he died within two Days without any other Sickness, breathing out his Soul in Sighs.

By an Order of the King's, found among his Papers, *Vasco Fernandez Hamon*, his Major, was appointed to succeed him. The Persuasions of *Monclaros*, who now disliked the Conquest, so far prevailed with him, that forgetting his Duty, he returned to *Alexumbé*. There some understanding Persons, and chiefly *Francis Pinto Pimentel*, his Kinsman, represented this Affair in such Manner to him, that he returned to *Monomotapa*. Being now delivered of that religious Man, who went away to Portugal, he let-out by the Way of *Zesala*, as *Francis Barreto* would have done, that being the properest Road for the Design in Hand: He marched directly towards the Mines of *Machibé* of the Kingdom of *Chikanga*, bordering within Land on that of *Quityre*, the next in Power to *Monomotapa*: With him was the same Number of Men, and Sorts of Instruments his Predecessor had. To oblige the King of *Quityre*, he complimented and sent him Presents; yet his Majesty grew so jealous of these Solicitations, that he received all very coldly.

THE Governor not making much Account of his Answer, marched into his Kingdom. Several Bodies of *Kafri* attempted to stop his Passage, but were routed with great Slaughter. The King seeing he did not prevail by Force of Arms, had Recourse to Policy. He caused all the People and Provisions to be withdrawn from the Towns and Country, so that the *Portuguese* suffered extreme Want till they came to *Zimbare*, his Court; but he was fled from thence, and had fortified himself in inaccessible Mountains. *Vasco* burnt the City, and marched on to *Chikanga*, the King whereof, rather through Fear than Love, received him with exterior Signs of Affection, and gave him free Passage to the Mines. The *Portuguese* driven on marched to them, many believing they should gather Gold by Handiubs: But seeing the Natives with much Difficulty collected only a little in a long Time, and that to make any thing of it, more Men and Materials were requisite, they returned the Way they came, and parted Friends with the King.

THOUGH they obtained not what was sought this Way, yet the Ease with which they came to the Place designed, evinced how great an Error it was to impose *Monclaros* as Director to the late Governor; who, only to follow his own ex-

The Capital taken.

BARRETO understanding the Superstition, having seen the like in *India*, ordered a Gunner to level a Piece at her; which was so well performed, that the old Hag was torn to Pieces, to the Astonishment of the *Kafri*, who believed her immortal. *Barreto* rewarded the Gunner with a Gold Chain. The Enemy coming-on without Order, Clouds of Arrows and Darts began to fall; but the *Portuguese* Musketeers killing them by Hundreds, they turned their Backs and fled. Many were slain in the Pursuit: Then the Governor marching to the City *Mangas*, met another Multitude like the former, which in like Manner was put to Flight. Above six thousand *Kafri* were slain, and but two *Portuguese*. The Governor was forced to alight and lead his Men. The City was entered without Opposition, being abandoned. In the Morning they discovered an Army as great as both the former. The *Kafri* were again routed, and begged Peace in the King's Name, who the next Day sent Embassadors to treat about it.

Desires to get Manufact.

It happened one of the Camels breaking loose, ran towards the Governor, who stopped him till his Pursuers came-up: The *Kafri*, who had never seen such a Creature, admiring to see it stop at the Governor, began to ask some Questions. He making his Advantage of their Ignorance, told them he had many of those Animals, which only fed upon Man's Flesh; and having devoured all that were killed, that Beast came from the rest to desire he would not make Peace, because they should then come to want Food: The Blacks, astonished hereat, earnestly intreated, that he would desire the Camels to be satisfied with good Beef, and they would instantly bring them a great Number. He granted their Request, and marched on. He was in great Distress for Provision, when News came that his Presence was required at *Alexumbé*, where *Anthony Pereira Brandam*, his Deputy, though eighty Years old, had seized the Fort. He gave the Command of the Forces to *Kafri*, and departed.

On his Appearance *Brandam* submitted, and he returned to *Monomotapa*. Being come to the East of *Sosa*, *Monclaros* came-out in a great Rage to tell him, that he should desist from that Conquest, with which he had imposed upon the King, that no more Men might be left; adding, that he should be answerable to God for all who

* *Machibé*, or *Mogiké*.
 † Some make *Chikanga* the Name of the King, and *Machibé*, or *Moukibé*, that of the Kingdom. This is called *Bekaranga* before, p. 304. c. and *Mokaranga*, p. 336. d.
 ‡ The *Quityre*, some considering it as the Name or Title of the King.

* Or, of transigent

1509. extravagant Humour, led him a Way so dangerous a
 and tedious. *Vasco* returned to *Quiteros*, and
 that King did now for Fear what he refused be-
 fore; permitting the *Portuguese* to march to the
 Mines of *Manumata*, only upon Condition they
 should pay him twenty Crowns yearly. *Vasco*
 passed thence to the Kingdom of *Chikova*, bor-
 dering upon *Manumata* to the Northward along
 the Inland. The Cause of undertaking this March,
 was the Account he had of rich Silver Mines.
 Having encamped, he asked the *Kafra* for the
 Mines; and they seeing it was in vain to resist,
 and fearing the Discovery of the Mines would be
 their Ruin, they scattered some Ore far enough
 from the Mines, and told them there they were.

By this Means the *Kafra* got Time to escape;
 for the *Portuguese* giving Credit to them, let
 them go, perhaps not desiring they should see
 what Treasure they got. The Governor caused
 all round about to be dug, and after much La-
 bour it was no Wonder he did not find what was
 not there. Provision growing scarce, and per-
 ceiving no Fruit of his Labour, he marched a-
 way; leaving Captain *Anthony Cardosa de Almeida*
 with two hundred Men, and Necessaries to con-
 tinue there some Days, to examine into the Truth
 of that so much coveted Corner of the Earth.

VASCO being gone, *Cardosa* suffered himself
 to be again deceived by the *Kafra*, who had be-
 fore imposed upon him. They offered, since he
 could not find a Vein there, they would show
 him a Place where he might; and leading him
 the Way of Death rather than that of the Mines,
 killed him and all his Men, after they had de-
 fended themselves with incredible Bravery. This
 may convince those who affirm, that Numbers
 of *Kafra* would fly from a Gun, as not having
 before seen them, since here two hundred Men
 fighting with them for their Lives were all slain
 by their Darts and Arrows.

THIS was the End of the Government of
Monomotapa, scarce begun sooner than ended,
 and possessed by two Governors, who no sooner
 saw, but they lost it: The first killed by rash
 Words, the second expelled by a prudent, not
 barbarous, Stratagem: However, the Peace and
 Trade with the Emperor of *Monomotapa* con-
 tinued.

SECT. II.

The Empire of Monomotapa.

Bounds, Situation, and Extent. River *Magnika*,
 or *Magnice*. River *Quama*, or *Zambeze*. Di-

* *De Faria's Portuguese Asia*, vol. 2. p. 349.
 supposes it lie between *Monomotapa* and *Kongo*.
Corientes. * Or, *Mano Motapa*.

vision into Kingdoms. *Mintz*. *Faire*, or *Mor-
 hets*. *Chikanga Kingdom*. *Kingdom of Solaim*.
Inhabitants of Monomotapa. *Emperor's Pa-
 lace*: *Officers of State*: *Emperor's Wives*. *So-
 lena Festivals*: *New Moon Feast*: *Great Holi-
 day*. *The Emperor's Power*. *Butua*, or *Abu-
 ta Kingdom*.

THE Empire of *Monomotapa* is bounded on
 the North, and Part of the West, by the
 River *Zambeze-Empeze*, or *Quama*, which se-
 parates it from the Kingdoms of *Atutua* and *Chi-
 kova*, the Countries of *Alumbet*, and the *Zimbas*,
 or *Mutimbos*, (belonging to the Empire of *Mo-
 nomotapi*) and the maritime Kingdom of *Ma-
 rula*. On the remaining Part of the Western
 Border, and on the South, it is bounded by the
 Country of the *Hottentots* and certain *Kafra*,
 from which it is separated by the River *Magnika*,
 called also that of *Leopence Marquez* and the
Holy Ghost: On the East it is washed by the *In-
 dian Ocean*.

It is situate between the forty-first and fifty-
 sixth Degrees of Eastern Longitude, and between
 the fourteenth and twenty-fifth Degrees of South
 Latitude; being six hundred and seventy Miles
 long from North to South, and six hundred and
 fifteen broad from West to East. It is a Penin-
 sula, or almost an Island, being inclosed with
 Water, excepting for the Space of about ninety
 Miles, which may be the Distance of the Source
 of the River *Magnika* from the *Zambeze*, or
Quama. *Lopez* says, it is, as it were, an Island,
 made by the Sea, the River *Magnice*, a Piece of
 the Lake whence the *Magnice* floweth, and the
 River *Quama*.

ACCORDING to the same Author, the River
Magnika * springeth-out of the first Lake of *Ni-
 lus**, and falls into the Sea between the Capes
Peschiera and *delle Correnti**, in twenty-three
 Degrees and an half, South Latitude. Into this
 River, near the Sea, three other large ones fall:
 The principal is, by the *Portuguese*, called *St*.
Christopher's (because discovered on that Saint's
 Day) but by the Inhabitants, *Nagaa*. The se-
 cond took the Name of one *Lorenco Margui*,
 who first found it. These two Rivers spring from
 the Mountains of the *Moyn*, by the People of the
 Country called *Tessa*.

THE third River is called *Arree*, which riseth
 out of the Mountains of the Gold Mines of *Mo-
 nomotapa**, and in some Places there are found
 small Pieces of Gold among its Sand.

THE River *Quama*, or *Quama*, is so called
 from a Castle, or Fortrefs, of the same Name,

* Or *Magnice*, as he calls it.

* That is, of the Fishery and the Currents, or Cape

Price of
Quama, or
Zambeze.

* Which he

possessed

1569. possessed by the *Mohammedans* and *Pagons*. The *Portuguese* call the Entrance, *The Mouth of Quama*, because it is there divided into seven Mouths; where there are five Islands, besides divers others that lie up the River, all very full and well-peopled with *Pagans*. The Author says, it rises out of the same Lake; but as that is now known to be an Error, the Geographers are at a Loss where to place it. *De Faria* calls it the *Quama*, or *Zambesi Empondo*.

DE FARIA says, the great River *Zambesi* runs through *Mozambique* and falls into the River *Chiriz*. This last passes through the Country of *Babero*, where there are many other large Rivers, whose Banks are possessed by several Kings, some absolute, others subject to *Mozambique*. He adds, that the *Zambesi* falls into the Sea by four Mouths; the first, that of *Quidimano*, ninety Leagues from *Mozambique*; the second, *Quama*, twenty-five to the Southward; the third, *Luaba*, five Leagues lower; and the fourth, *Luabul*, fifteen more to the South. Between them are fruitful and large Islands, whereof one is sixty Leagues in Compass. The River is navigable, the same Number of Leagues, to the Town of *Sena*, inhabited by *Portuguese*, and as many more to *Tete*, a Colony of theirs also.

This Empire is divided into twenty-five Kingdoms, which are *Mongan*, *Burce*, *Manika*, *Bosja*, *Mafingo*, *Reme*, *Chiqua*, *Chirua*, *Chidima*, *Boquiras*, *Luabana*, *Chirwara*, *Kantefaka*, *Dabaria*, *Makurambi*, *Mangusi*, *Autuwara*, *Chewa*, *Chunguie*, *Dixa*, *Ramba*, *Raffini*, *Coirao*, *Mokaranga*, and *Reme de Beza*. There are many Lordships that have not the Title of Kings. The greatest of the Kingdoms independent of *Mozambique* is *Mongan*, which borders on the Rivers *Quama* and *Zambesi*.

The richest Mines (in this Kingdom) are those of *Mossapa*, called *Asur*. In these Mines has been found a Lump of Gold worth twelve thousand Ducats, and another of the Value of four hundred thousand. It is not only found among Stones, but grows up within the Bark of several Trees to the Top, where the Branches spread. The Mines of *Manebika* and *Butua* are not much inferior to these. There are many others not so considerable. There are three Fairs or Markets, whither the *Portuguese* trade for this Gold, from the Castle of *Tete* on the River *Zambesi*, an hundred and twenty Leagues from the

a Sea: The first is *Luana*, four Days Journey within Land; the second, *Burnia*, further distant; and *Mossapa*, the third, yet farther off. This Gold was purchased for Cloth, Glass Beads, and other Things of no Value. At *Mossapa* resides a *Portuguese* Officer, appointed by the Commander of *Mozambique*, by Consent of the Emperor of *Mozambique*; but upon Condition, not to go into the Country, without his Leave, upon Pain of Death. He is Judge of the Differences that arise there. There are Churches of the *Dominicans* at *Mossapa*, *Beluze*, and *Luana*.

THE original Number and Time of the Reign of the Kings is not known. It is believed, there were several in the Time of the Queen of *Saba*, and that they were subject to her; for thence she had her Gold. In the Mount *Asur*, near *Mossapa*, are seen the Ruins of stately Buildings, supposed to be Palaces and Castles. In Process of Time, the Empire was divided into three Kingdoms, *Quivera*, *Sabanda*, and *Chikanga*; the last the most powerful, as possessing the Mines of *Manebika*, *Butua*, and others. It is believed, the Blacks of *Butua*, of the Kingdom of *Chikanga*, are those that carried the Gold to *Angola*; because it is thought there are but an hundred Leagues Distance between those two Places. This Country bears Rice and Indian Wheat, but Abundance of all Sorts of Cattle, Fowl, and Gardening. Their chief Care is Pasturage and Tillage.

ALL the Coast of *Mozambique*, from the Kingdom of *Manebika* and the *Zambesi*, or *Quama*, was formerly possessed by the *Portuguese*, and called the Kingdom of *Sesala*, or *Zesala*, from *Sesala*, a Town in the Middle between these two Rivers; Yet *Lopez*, who gives it this Extent, says, it was but a small Kingdom, and had only a few Houses or Towns in it; the chief whereof was the Island *Sesala*, lying in the River of that Name. It is inhabited by *Mohammedans*, whose King submitted to the Crown of Portugal, because he would not be subject to the Emperor of *Mozambique*. For this Reason, the *Portuguese* keep a Fort in the Mouth of the River *Quama*, and trade in those Countries for Gold, Ivory, and Amber (which is found upon that Coast) and Slaves; giving in Exchange, Cotton-Cloth, and Silks brought from *Kambaya*, which is the common Apparel of those People.

THE *Mohammedans* who dwell here are not

* See *Pigafetta's* Relation of *Kroge*, p. 192, & 399. The Name seems to favour, if he has not strained it for that Purpose; for others call it *Fara*.

* The Author is positive, although it is a very doubtful Point. * *Lopez* says, that in the Countries of *Mozambique*, there remain many ancient Structures, of great Labour and singular Architecture, built with Stone, Lime, and Timber, the like whereof are not to be seen in all the Provinces adjoining; and thence conjectures, that *Shamir* might have had his Gold from hence. See *Pigafetta*, as before, p. 195.

† *De Faria's* *Portuguese Asia*, p. 343, & 344.

the original Inhabitants, but *Arabi*, who trafficked farther in small Barks, before the Arrival of the *Portuguese*.

LOPEZ says, the Empire of *Monomotapa* is very large and the People infinite; that they are of Colour black, very courageous in War, of a middle Stature, and swift of Foot. The principal People of *Monomotapa*, according to *de Faria*, and whereof the Emperor is, are the *Mbaranje*: These, he says, are not warlike, nor furnished with any other Arms but Bows, Arrows, and Javelins. They have no Idols (or Images) but acknowledge one only God, and believe there is a Devil; that he is wicked, and they call him *Mauusi*. They believe their Kings go to Heaven, and call them *Mozambi*, invoking them in Time of Need, as we (says the Author, meaning the Papists) do the Saints. They speak of Things past by Tradition, having no Knowledge of Letters. The Lame and Blind they call the King's Poor, because maintained by him with great Charity; and if they travel, the Towns they go through are obliged to maintain and furnish them Guides from one Place to another: A Lesson for Christians.

THE Emperor has a great Palace, though of Wood: The chief Apartments of it are three; one for himself, another for his Wife, and a third for his menial Servants. It has three Doors into a Court: One for the Queen to go in and out at; another for him, and the Servants who attend his Person, and are Sons of his Noblemen; the third for the Chief Cooks, who are two great Men, his Relations, and the under Cooks, who are also Men of Quality. None of these must be above twenty Years of Age; for till that Age, they do not believe that they have to do with Women, and if any have they are severely punished. After that Time, they are preferred to great Employments. Those within Doors are governed by a Captain, and those without by another, as formerly in Spain, the *Alcalde de las Donzellas*.

THE principal Officers about the King are *Kingomasha*, Governor of the Kingdoms; *Makamasha*, Captain-General; *Amuya*, Great Steward; to him it belongs, when the King's principal Wife dies, to name another in her Stead; but it must be one of the King's Sisters, or nearest Relations; *Inhantava*, the head Musician, who has many under him, and is a great Lord; *Narukas*, Captain of the Vanguard; *Bukarame*, which signifies the King's right Hand; *Mazande*, the chief Conjurer; *Netambe*, the Apothecary who keeps the Ointments and Utensils for Sorcery; *Nekans*, chief Porter. All these Offices are executed by Lords.

THERE is no Delicacy used in Cookery. It consists only of boiled and roasted; they eat the same Meats as usual among us, with the Addition of Mice, which they esteem as good as Rabbit or Partridge.

THE King has many Wives, only nine called great Queens, which are his Sisters, or near Relations; the others the Daughters of Nobles. The chiefest is called *Mosavira*, and Mother of the sovereign; who often present her, because she follows their Business with the King; and he sends no Ambassador to them without some Servant of hers. The second is *Inhantava*, who solicits for the *Moors*, the third, *Nobuzza*, who lives in the same Apartment with him; the fourth, *Nawumba*; the fifth, *Nemungere*; the sixth, *Nzingapangi*; the seventh, *Nemungere*; the eighth, *Niffant*; the ninth, *Nekaramia*. Each of them lives apart with as great State as the King, and have several Revenues and Kingdoms for their Expence. As soon as one dies, another succeeds in Place and Name. They have Power to reward and punish as well as the King. Sometimes he goes to them, sometimes they come to him. There are many Women waiting on them, of whom he makes use as he pleases.

EVERY Month has its Festival Days, and is divided into three Weeks, each of ten Days: The first Day is that of the new Moon, and the Festivals the fourth and fifth of each Week. On these Days they put on their best Apparel; and the King gives public Audience to all, holding a Traunceon about three Quarters of a Yard long in each Hand, as it were, leaning upon it. They who speak to him lie prostrate: This lasts from Morning till Evening. If he is indisposed, *Ningomasha* stands in his Place. No-body can speak to him or go to Court on the eighth Day of the new Moon, because it is held most unlucky.

On the Day the new Moon appears, the King with two Javelins runs about in his House as if he was fighting. The great Men are present at this Pastime, and it being ended, a Pot full of Indian Wheat, boiled whole, is brought, which he scatters about the Ground, bidding them eat, because it is the Growth of the Earth. They know how to flatter, for every one strives to gather most, knowing that pleases him; and they eat it as favourably as if it were the greatest Dainty.

THE greatest holy Day, is the first Day of the Moon of *Moy*. They call it *Chamuy*. On this Day all the great Men, who are a vast Number, resort to Court, and there, with Javelins in their Hands, run about representing a Fight. The Sport lasts all Day: Then the King withdraws, and is not seen in eight Days after; during which Time the Drums never cease beat-

1569. ing. On the last Day he orders the Noblemen a
 De Faria he has the least Affection for to be killed. This
 is in the Nature of a Sacrifice he offers to his
Mexicans, or Ancestors. This done, the Drums
 cease, and every Man goes home.

The Mem.
 ber. THE *Mexicans* eat Man's Flesh, whereof there
 is a public Butchery. It would be endless to re-
 late all that may be said concerning this Em-
 pire^a.

Frederick's
 Prince. LOPEZ says, that this Emperor maintaineth
 many Armies in several Provinces, divided into
 Legions, according to the Use and Custom of
 the *Romans*; because, as many Kings are his
 Vassals, and often rebel against him, he is obliged
 to keep-up a large standing Army to awe them.

THE most valorous of his Soldiers (if you
 will believe the same Author) are his Legions of

Women, who burn-off their left Paps with Fire,
 because they should be no Hindrance in shoot-
 ing, after the Manner of the ancient *Amazon*.
 Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows. An Ac-
 count has been already given of their Way of
 fighting^b. The King grants them certain Coun-
 tries where they dwell by themselves; only they
 sometimes keep Company with Men for Gene-
 ration's Sake. If the Children be Males, they
 send them home to their Fathers; but if Fe-
 males, they keep them and breed them in the
 Exercise and Warfare.

IN the Kingdom of *Butua*, which extends
 from the Mountains of the *Alora* to the River
Magnika, there are many Mines of Gold, and
 a People of the same Qualities and Conditions
 with the People of *Monomatapa*^c.

^a De Faria's *Portuguese Asia*, vol. 2. p. 343. & seqq.
 Relation of *Koogo*, p. 191, and 195.

^b See before, p. 320.

^c *Pigafetta's*

VOYAGES and TRAVELS

INTO

A S I A.

BOOK I.

VOYAGES and TRAVELS in the Empire of CHINA.

CHAP. I.

The Embassy of Peter de Goyer and Jacob de Keyzer from the Dutch East India Company to the Emperor of China, in 1655.

By John Nieuhoff, Steward to the Ambassadors.

Translated from the Dutch.

INTRODUCTION.

Introduction.
Portuguese in China. **A**LTHOUGH China was discovered Introduction. over Land by *Mares Pels* the *Venturian*, towards the End of the thirteenth Century, yet it was very little known to *Europeans*, till the *Portuguese* arrived there by Sea towards the End of the fifteenth, and the *Romish* Missioners found Admittance into the Empire. In 1517, they established a Trade at *Quan tong*, commonly called *Kanton*, as hath been already related*: Afterwards they settled a Factory also at *Ning po*, called by them *Liampe*, on the Eastern Part of *China*, and drove a considerable Trade along the Coast between those two famous Ports, till their unofferable Pride and Insolence brought-on their Destruction every where but at *Ma-kau*, or *Macao*, an Island in the Mouth of the River of *Kanton*, which they still hold, though under great Restrictions. THE *Dutch* being arrived in *India* to the *Tie Dutch* Height of Power, chiefly on the Ruins of the *Portuguese*, endeavoured to get Access into *China*.

* See Vol. I. p. 77, and 79.

Interdiction to trade with the Natives. This they had long attempted in vain, having still met with Opposition, as was supposed, says Nieuhof, from an old Prophecy among them, *That a female Nation of Whites, charmed all over, should one Day conquer their Country.* But upon Advice, brought from *Mataffar* by the Jesuit *Martini*, (who had concealed himself ten Years in *China*, propagating) that the *Manchew Tartars* had conquered that Empire, it was concluded, by the Government of *Batavia*, to renew their Attempt. This was performed by sending certain Merchants to try the Pulse of the *Chinese* at *Kanton*, upon whose Report Ambassadors were dispatched from *Batavia* to the Court of *Pe-king*, there to solicit Liberty to trade.

Nieuhof's Relation by Carpentier. An Account of this Embassy was drawn-up by *John Nieuhof*, (famous for his Voyages into several Parts of the World) who was Steward to the Ambassadors, which has been published in different Languages and Forms. In 1665, there appeared a French Relation of this Embassy, printed at *Leiden*, in Folio, by *Joach. de Meurs*. It is called a Translation, and seems to have been made from *Nieuhof's* Manuscript, by *John de Carpentier*. It is divided into two Parts, the first containing a Narrative of the Embassy, in two hundred and ninety Pages; the second, a general Description of *China*, in an hundred and thirty-four, besides the Preface and Dedication to *M. Colbert*, Minister of State to *Louis* the Fourteenth of *France*. But *Nieuhof's* Relation is only the Basis of this large Work, which *de Carpentier* has formed by the Addition of almost all the second Part, and at least one Half of the first.

First Cuts. THE CUTS, which are very numerous, are finely engraved, and, as the Editor informs, from the Author's own Draughts; consisting of the Habits of the *Chinese*, Processions and State of the Magistrates, Prospects of the Cities and Temples, Animals, Birds, Vegetables, &c. Most of these are small Plates, printed on the respective Pages of the Book. The large ones are in separate Sheets, and are chiefly the Prospects of Cities, Palaces, or great Processions. In the first Part, *An-bing*, or *An-ting*. Vice-Roys of *Kanton's* Feast, *Batavia*. *Hary-gan* (*Wbay-gan*). *Hu-kew*. *Kanton*. Plan of the same. *Ka-yu-tsun*. *Kan-chen*. *Kin-nan-gan*. *Ku-ching*. *Adaku*, or *Ma-ku*. *Nam-bun*, or *Nam-bung*. *Nan-chang*, or *Eyang-shi*. *Nau-gan*. *Nap-sung*. *Nan-ting*. *Pau-tin-shi*. *Pe-king*. Plan of the imperial Palace there. Inland of the Palace. The Porcelaine

Tower. *Sin-gle*. *Tyen-hen-way*. *Tung-hing* or *Tung-hing*. *Tung-lu*. *Tau-chow*. *Tung-ling*. *V-fu*. *Pan-nan-gan*, or *Pan-gan*. *Shen-tsu*. *Shau-chew*. *Yan-se-shi*. In the second Part the Inside of a Temple. *Musa Fruit*. Order of the Horse in marching.

THE Year following, *M. de Thorenot* published *Nieuhof's* Relation of the Embassy in his French Collection of Voyages and Travels, taking up sixty-six Folio Pages. These are accompanied with thirty-three Figures, in fourteen or fifteen half Sheet Plates. It is followed by a Journal of the Rout of the Dutch from *Kanton* to *Pe-king*, an exact Description of these two Cities, the Way of making *China*, &c. consisting of twenty-seven Pages; with a large Draught of the Road, twenty-three Inches long, made by the Author.

THEVENOT informs us, that this Translation is conformable to two Dutch Copies, of which he had the Manuscripts, one of them signed *Nieuhof*, and that he has neither changed nor added any thing from other Authors. He judged it wrong to have mixed the Description of the Provinces with *Nieuhof's* Remarks, since it appeared, from his own Confession, that the Dutch never stirred out of their Lodgings either at *Kanton* or *Pe-king*.

WHETHER these Descriptions were inserted in *Nieuhof's* Manuscripts, as they are in his printed Relation in Dutch, or *Thorenot* said this by Way of Censure on *Carpentier's* Work, we cannot determine; but it is certain, that the Manuscripts were accompanied with Cuts. *Nieuhof* declares, that he made accurate Maps and Plans of the Countries and Towns, besides Draughts of the Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Plants, and other Rarities. He might have added of the Inhabitants and the Magistrates, their State and Processions. But *Thorenot* has omitted those of all the Cities, except *Pe-king* and *Nan-ting*, because he says he found they did not tally at all with the Description he gives of them, and suspected they were merely the Fruits of Invention. He alleges another Reason for this Omission, that the Cities of *China* being all alike, (according to the *Chinese* Geographers) when one has seen one, he has seen all. How far this Plea would justify such a Proceeding, were the Draughts genuine, we cannot say; since, let the Uniformity in building and laying-out the Streets be what it will, there would always be a considerable Variety in the Prospects, arising from the

* See *Nieuhof's* Account of the Embassy of the Dutch East India Company in 1655, translated by *Orbyl*, p. 20.

* See the Preface.

* See his Advertisement to the Reader.

* He writes here,

Nieuhof, afterwards, *Nieuhof*. See *Orbyl's Africa*, p. 3. And these are so small and imperfect, being inserted as Ornaments to other Figures, that they afford no Idea at all of the Cities they represent.

different Situation of the Places, and Disposition of the Objects. As for the Figures of Plants and Animals, which *Theroux* has likewise left out, most of them are inserted in his general Description of *China*, taken from *Martini*.

THE Cuts which he has retained are engraved the Size of the Originals, being generally much larger than those in *Carpentier's* Edition, and more correct, perhaps, though not so well finished, or set-out to Advantage. The following is a List of them. 1. A Map of the Ambassador's Journey through *China*. 2. The young Vice-Roy of *Kanton*. 3. A Tartar Horseman armed. 4. Tartar Woman. 5. Garden of Pleasure. 6. A Mandarin. 7. Chinese Lady. 8. Two Religious clothed in Yellow, with each a large Pair of Beads. 9. Religious dressed in Black, with Beads like those used by Papists. 10. Religious Mendicant, with a large brimmed Hat. 11. A Beggar with his Head shaped like a Sugar-Loaf. 12. Sepulchre of a great Lord. 13. Beggar carrying Fire on his Head to extort Alms. 14. Another with a Lump on his Forehead as big as one's Fist, made by beating it against a Stone. 15. Punishment of a Religions taken in Company with lewd Women. 16. A Woman of Pleasure riding through the Streets on an Ass, with a Man before her to hire her out. 17. Two Beggars knocking their Foreheads together to extort Alms. 18. City of *Nan-king*, very small View. 19. Street of *Nan-king* in Perspective. 20. Porcelain Tower of *Nan-king*. 21. View of the City of *Pe-king*, very small. 22. A triumphal Arch. 23. Temple of *Shan-tai-wei*. 24. Floating Village on the Rivers. 25. A great Junk, or Vessel, with Mat-Sails. 26. Serpent-Vessel. 27. Emperor's Court, when the Dutch had Audience. 28. A Tartar, who with a Strip of Leather makes as great a Noise as the Report of three Pistols fired one after the other. 29. A Sorcerer, who sells Wind to Mariners, with a Rodkin through his Cheek. 30. A Waggon which carries three People very swiftly, though pushed-on by only one Man. 31. A Tartar with his Wife behind him. 32. A Ship with a Sort of Wheel or Bow-Net instead of Sails. 33. The ordinary Dress of the Chinese.

In 1670, a Dutch Relation of the same Embassy was published at *Amsterdam* in Folio, under the Name of *Nieuhof*, embellished with a great Number of Cuts, and augmented with a Description of the

Provinces in the Manner of *Carpentier's* Edition, but not swelled so much with foreign Matter.

Soon after *Ogilby* published an Account of the same Embassy in English. The Title agrees more with the *Leyden* than the *Amsterdam* Edition; nor is it mentioned whether the Translation was made from the Dutch or the French: However, as it appears from the Manner of introducing and relating Things (not to mention its being free from a great Number of Superfluities with which the latter abounds) that it was not done from thence, we conclude that it is a Version from the Dutch Copy. The Cuts, which are of the same Kind with those in the French Edition, but not near so well engraved, are, doubtless, the Cuts of the *Amsterdam* Impression, taken from the original Plates; for the Explanations are given both in Dutch and English.

Or these several Editions of this Work, we take that of *Theroux* to be both the most exact and genuine: For which Reason we have used it as a Check upon the English Translation, and have often supplied it from thence; which Additions, for Distinction's Sake, are placed between Hooks.

SECT. I.

Attempts of the Dutch to settle in China, previous to the Embassy.

Schodel sails to *Kanton*. Lands there: Sent-for by the Vice-Roy: Is well received: Opposed by the Portuguese. Free Trade granted him, and revoked. Waggenaar's Attempt. Portuguese Arts. The Design miscarries a second Time.

MARTINI the Jesuit having reported, among other Things, that the Tartars had proclaimed a free Trade in the City of *Kanton* to all Foreigners, the Government of *Batavia* resolved to know the Truth of this Report, by sending a Ship thither from *Tay-wan* in *Fernaux*.

ACCORDINGLY, [the twentieth of January, 1653] *Frederick Schodel*, a Merchant, set-sail in a Frigate called the *Brown Fish*, richly freighted, [to the Value of forty-six thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven Crowns] and in nine Days landed at *Hay-ta-men* in *Kanton* River.

THERE the *Hay-ta-men*, or Admiral of the Sea, came aboard to salute him in Behalf of the

* These are *Lamas*, or Priests, of the Sect of *Fo*.

† *An Embassy from the East India Company of the United Provinces to the great Tartar Khan, Emperor of China, by their Excellencies Peter de Goyer and Jacob de Keyser, at his imperial City of Pe-king, where, in the City, Town, Villages, Ports, Rivers, &c. in their Passage from Kanton to Peking, are agreeably described by Mr. John Nieuhof, Steward to the Embassadors, &c.*

‡ In *Theroux*, *Hay-ta-men*, they-ta-men, and Hay is misspelled.

§ The second Edition, which we make use of, was printed in 1675.

1655.
Schedel.

Magistrates of *Kanton*. *Schedel* treated him handsomely, and then accompanied him ashore. But coming near the City, he landed in great State, without speaking a Word to *Schedel*, who was put into another Vessel in a very slight Manner, and carried to the farther End of the City. There he was searched and treated with ill Language by *Ennemé de Lucifurro*, a *Portuguese*, and others.

Lanch at
Kanton.

TOWARDS Night several *Tartars* came to visit him, who after a while carried him to an Idol Temple, where the Priests had spent all the Night at their Devotions to forestall the Success which these Strangers were to have. In his Absence some *Mandarins*, by Order of the two Vice-Roy, who rule in *Kanton* with equal Power, came and opened his Chests where the Presents lay. After taking an Account of them, they flung them scornfully about. They were likewise carrying-off the General of *Batavia's* Letter to the Vice-Roy, but meeting *Schedel*, flung it in his Face, reproaching him as if the *Hollanders* came only to betray their Country.

SCHEDÉL finding himself thus unpleasantly dealt-with by the *Kantoniens*, began to consider which Way to pacify and undeceive them. Having bethought himself of some Bottles of rare Wine among the Presents, he called for one, and desired the *Mandarins* to taste of it*. The Liquor pleasing their Palates, they tossed-off their Cups freely; and at length became so well reconciled to the *Dutch* Merchant, that they begged his Pardon for what had passed: Acknowledging that the *Portuguese* had infused those Notions into their Heads; but that now they were convinced they were false, and he might depend on civil Usage for the future.

Sent for by
the Vice-Roy.

NEXT Day, by Sun-rise, *Schedel* was sent for by the old Vice-Roy *Pig na nang*†. He was followed by Crowds of Mob, giving him ill Language. Some cried, *How finely Iron Fetters would become his Legs*; others pointed at him with their Fingers, and some blew Lice upon his Followers: At length two *Mandarins* brought him to the Court. The Vice-Roy was seated on his Throne, which stood in the Midst of the Palace on an high, square Platform, and was covered with rich Silk. Round him stood about two hundred Gentlemen, with the Admiral, all clothed in the *Tartar* Fashion. The Vice-Roy having received the Letter and Presents from *Schedel*, as well as heard what he had to say against the Calumnies laid to the Charge of the *Dutch*, he was so well satisfied, that he caused him to sit-down next his

Throne among his chief *Grandeers*, and invited him to a splendid Dinner prepared on Purpose. The Table‡ appointed for *Schedel* and his Company was covered with thirty-two Silver Dishes, heaped with Dainties; and Drink was served in Gold Cups.

DURING the Entertainment, the Vice-Roy§ sent to ask several Questions concerning the Condition and Government of *Holland*; After which he was dismissed with great Respect, and conducted by the *Hay to nu*, with the Letter and Presents, to the young Vice-Roy *Sig na nang*¶, who received him likewise very politely, and invited him to Dinner, but seemed rather to side with the *Portuguese*. His Mother, but newly arrived from *Tartary*, being desirous to see the *Dutch*, sent for *Schedel* and his Followers, who broke-off abruptly in the Middle of his Speech, and went. He found her with her Attendants waiting for him in an open Hall, and was courteously received. During his Stay, he ordered his Trumpets to sound, which much delighted and obliged the Ladies. After this he returned to the Vice-Roy, and finished his Discourse: From thence he was conducted in great State by the *Hay to nu* to the great *Mandarin*, *Tu tang**, who was the third Person in the Government [of the Province:] But this Officer was content to take a View of *Schedel* through a Window, and suffered him to depart without offering him the least Civility in his House, so that he was forced to provide another Lodging for himself and his Company.

THE Governor and Council of *Macao*, to oppose by force this Negotiation in its Birth, not only endeavoured to corrupt and prejudice the *Hay to nu*, but sent a formal Embassy to *Kanton*, in order to represent the *Dutch* as a faithless People, and Kind of Pirates; who, having no proper Residence on Land, had made themselves formidable by Sea, had taken *Hay to nu*, at the Mouth of *Kanton* River, made Peace with the *Chinese* Pirate *Kwings*, plundered their Merchants, and were now come to force their Way into *China*. The *Pori*, or Philosopher, also at *Kanton* joined in representing them as fraudulent Dealers.

BUT the Vice-Roy, by Advice of the *Hay to nu*, whom *Schedel* had engaged, returned for Answer, that notwithstanding Reports, they had a good Opinion of the *Dutch*, and judged that *China* would receive much Benefit from a Commerce with them. Hereupon they published in Writing their Consent to a free Trade, and gave *Schedel* the

* In *Theroux's* Relation, he gained over one *Mandarin* by a Present of some Boxes.
† According to one of *Theroux's* Manuscripts, each *Puffin*, so the

Negro Boy, had a Table for himself, with thirty-two Silver Dishes.
‡ By others, *Sig na nang*. In *Tes-savant's*, *Sig na nang*.
§ In *Ogilby*, *Tu tang*; in *Theroux*, *Tu tang*.

By others, *Pig na nang*.
¶ By others, *Sig na nang*. In *Tes-savant's*, *Sig na nang*.

The City of NEW YORK



J. Childs del.

Plat 41

leave to erect a Factory *. Matters were at this a
 Peking, when a Commissioner, newly arrived from
 Pe-king, dissuaded the Vice-Roy against what he
 had done; alleging, that although he might
 grant a Port for Trade to Foreigners, he ought
 not to allow them a constant Residence in the
 Country without the Emperor's Consent. This
 Remonstrance so much perplexed the Vice-Roy,
 that he advised Schedel forthwith to depart for
 that Time; left, as he said, the King of Batavia
 (meaning the General) might think they were
 kept Prisoners at Kanton. Schedel accordingly,
 two Days after, set sail, with two Letters from
 the Vice-Roy to Nicholas Perburgh, Commander
 at Tay wan; wherein they offered the General
 their Friendships, and advised him, in case he
 desired a free Trade in China, to send an Am-
 bassador with rich Presents to the great Khán *.

THE Government of Batavia hereupon wrote
 to their Principals in Holland for Directions; and
 in the mean-time, to keep the Business on Foot,
 sent Zacharias Waggenaar to China with two
 loaded Vessels, the *Shell-Fish* and *Braun-Fish*.
 [To him Schedel was joined as an Assistant.] Be-
 ing arrived at Wang fu *, within three Miles of
 Kanton, they remained three Days without send-
 ing any ashore; but finding none came aboard,
 they sent one of the Company [Schedel] to Land,
 who applied himself to the *Hay ta nu*. This
 Officer referred him to the *Tu-tang*, whose Se-
 cretary acquainted him, that the Portuguese had
 obtained a Letter from Pe-king to the Magistrates
 of Kowen, advising them to have a watchful Eye
 over the Dutch, especially if they came without
 an Ambassador, for that they were a treacherous
 People; and that, for fear of being known
 in China, durst not appear at Pe-king.

AT the same Time there came an Officer from
 Ma-kau with a Request, that an Embargo might
 be laid on the Dutch Ships there, under Pretence
 that they had formerly, in a piratical Way, taken
 several of their Ships. The Portuguese likewise,
 to prevent the *Hollanders* from obtaining a Li-
 berty of Trade, paid an Arrear of four Years
 Tax. In short, Waggenaar despaired of Suc-
 cess, although the Men in Power flattered him
 with Hopes: Mean-time no-body was suffered to
 pals to or from him, by two or three of the Vice-
 Roy's Vessels. At last the Messenger came-back
 with the *Tu-tang*'s Secretary, and two *Mande-
 rians*; with Orders for the Ships to come within
 half a Mile of the City, and lie there till the
 Portuguese Officer (who was to know nothing
 of the Arrival of the Dutch) was gone. On this
 Occasion Waggenaar was presented with several

Rarities, to shew that they were received as
 Friends; but none of his Company were suffered
 to go ashore.

AFTERWARDS the *Hay ta nu* came aboard to
 conduct Waggenaar to Court: But just as he was
 taking Horse, there came two *Mandarins* to know
 his Business, and if he had brought any Letters
 for the great Khán, or the *Tu-tang*. They add-
 ed, That the Portuguese were the Occasion of this
Misunderstanding; and that if the Dutch would
 appear before the Vice-Roy, they must be very li-
 beral to all about him. Waggenaar made Answer,
 That he was not willing to bribe the Vice-Roy or
 his Courtiers to take the Letters and Presents which
 he brought; but yet he would give a good Sum of
 Money to the Person who should procure them a free
 Trade for that Year at Kanton. During this Con-
 ference, the *Hay ta nu* returned with Word, that
 the Vice-Roy could not see him, but that he
 would read his Letter. Waggenaar sent it, and
 the Vice-Roy's Interpreter came soon after to in-
 form him; that the Reason why he could not be
 admitted to the Speech of his Master, was, be-
 cause the Dutch had not brought with them any
 Letters or Presents for the Emperor, as had been
 earnestly recommended by him.

WHEN Waggenaar saw that he could effect no-
 thing at Kanton, he returned to Batavia. Those
 People were not ashamed to demand ten thousand
 Taal of Silver, only to render the Letter and Pre-
 sents acceptable to the Vice-Roy, before any
 Conference could be had about carrying-on a
 Trade *.

SECT. II.

The Embassy of Peter de Goyer and Jacob de
 Keyzer to Pe-king.

The Ambassadors set out from Batavia. City of
 Ma-kau. Hey-ta mon Port. Arrive at Kan-
 ton. Visited by a Mandarin. Are obliged to re-
 turn on-board. The Vice-Roy's Feast: Order of
 it. A favourable Answer from the Emperor.
 The old Vice-Roy's Entertainment. They pre-
 pare for their Journey to Pe-king by Water.

ACCORDING to the Proposal of the
 General John Maatzwiler, and the Coun-
 cil of India, the Governors of the East India
 Company at Amsterdam ordered an Embassy to
 be sent from Batavia to the great Khán; where-
 upon Peter de Goyer and Jacob de Keyzer, Mer-
 chants, were chosen for that Purpose. Their
 Train consisted of fourteen Persons, viz. two

* According to *Therouet's* Copy, they took of their Merchandise to the Value of seventy-seven thousand
 eight hundred and seventeen Crowns, which was double what they cost.

† In *Therouet*, *Waggenaar*.

‡ *Ninkof*, in *Ogilby's China*, p. 21, & seq.

1655.

Nobels.

Merchants, six Waiters, a Steward, a Surgeon, a their Credentials at a Distance, Chairs were set for them to sit down.

They took with them also two Merchants more to take Care of the Traffic at *Kanton* during their Journey to *Pe-king*. Their Presents consisted of several rich Pieces of Woollen Cloth, fine Linen, several Sorts of Spices, Coral, little Boxes of Wax, perspective and Looking-Glasses, Swords, Guns, Feathers, Armour, &c. The Purport of their Commission was to establish a firm League with the Emperor, and obtain a free Trade for the Dutch throughout his Dominions.

The fourteenth of June, 1655, they set-sail in two Yatchs, which were to carry them to *Kanton*, and thence to *Pe-king*; and on the same Day, in July following, passed by *Ma-lau*.

City of Ma-lau.

THIS City is built on a very high Rock, surrounded by the Sea on all Sides, except the Northern, where it joins the Island of *Ma-lau* by a narrow Neck of Land. There is no Port for large Ships, the Sea there not being very deep. It is famous for Cannon, which are made of *Chinese* and *Japan* Copper. The Town is walled, and towards the Land defended by two Castles, erected on little Hills. The Name is compounded of *Amu*, an Idol formerly there, and *Gau*, a safe Harbour, in *Chinese*. The *Portuguese* having been allowed this waste Spot to build a Town upon, it soon became a flourishing City, and the greatest Mart in *Asia*. They have the Privilege of trading twice a Year at *Kanton*. It is entered in their Custom-Books, that when Commerce flourished there, they exported from *Kanton* above three hundred C chests of Silks, an hundred and fifty Pieces in each; two thousand five hundred Ingots of Gold, each weighing thirteen Ounces; eight hundred Weight of Musk, besides great Quantities of Gold Thread, Linen, raw Silk, precious Stones, Pearls, &c.

They to Ma-lau.

THE eighteenth, they cast Anchor in the Port of *Hay ta oon*, an exceeding pleasant Place, and commodious for Trade. Presently a Bark full of Soldiers came aboard in the Governor's Name to know the Occasion of their Coming. The Ambassadors sent their Secretary *Henry Barin* to inform him by Word of Mouth. He was conducted to the Governor's Bed-Chamber, who received him courteously; but asked him, why the Dutch returned thither, and whether they were not forbidden to come to *Kanton*?

SIX Days after, there came two *Mandarins* from that City to inspect the Ambassadors Credentials, for whom they sent to the Governor's House near the Village of *Lam me*, a little higher in the River. The Governor sat between the two *Mandarins*, guarded by Soldiers. They were received very courteously, and having shewed

On the twenty-ninth, a new *Hay tow* and a Vice-Admiral came to conduct them to *Kanton*. The Ambassadors at their Request went again ashore, and were led to an Idol Temple, where being received after the usual Manner, they spread their Credentials on the Table. Then the *Hay tow* asked them several Questions concerning their Voyage, the Ships, their Letter and Presents. He wondered that there was no Letter for the *Tou-tang* of *Kanton*, and that the Emperor's was put-up so meanly; giving them to understand, that it ought to have been wrapped in a Gold Purse or Box. At parting, the Commissioners promised to come aboard next Day to receive the Presents.

ACCORDINGLY they came with a numerous Attendance in Vessels decked with Streamers; and carried the Ambassadors with their Secretary and four others in one of their Vessels to *Kanton*: Where being arrived, the *Hay tow* and Vice-Admiral went into the City without speaking a Word to them. After waiting about two Hours at the Gate, they were sent for by the Vice-Roy, and conducted to the Lodging which *Schedel* formerly had, where they were attended by the City-Marshal.

THE thirty-first, they were visited by the *Pu-tyen fan*, the Emperor's Treasurer, who was the fourth Man in the City. Here they underwent a new Examination; as, How long they had been married? Their Names and Employments? If the Emperor's Letter was not written on better Paper than the Vice-Roy's? How their Prince and King was called, and the like? They seemed to be displeased at the slight Fashion of the Credentials, and asked whether the Prince and Government of *Holland* had no Stamp or Seal for their Letters. To the Request of the Ambassadors, that they might have Audience of the Vice-Roy, and Leave to go to *Pe-king*, it was answered, that they could have no Audience of any one in *Kanton* till an Answer to the Letter came from Court: However, the Vice-Roy promised to visit them.

AUGUST the second, the Ambassadors Retinue in the Yatch were conducted up the River by four great War Ships of the Vice-Roy. The Shores were full of populous Villages and fruitful Fields. Arriving the fourth before the Ambassadors Lodgings at *Kanton*, they were obliged to return on-board; under Pretence that no Ambassadors to the Emperor were to reside there without express Order, and that the Governor could not answer it to his Majesty in case any Accident should happen to them on Shore. Two *Mandarins* also brought the Credentials opened,

: Or, *Hay ta oon*, that is, Admiral.

laying.

saying, the Vice-Roy durst not receive them till a they had received Advice from *Pe-king*.

THE Ambassadors, after three Weeks Stay on-board, had Leave to land with their Followers, and possess their former Lodgings, but were not permitted by their Guards to walk the Streets.

Two Days after, there came a *Mandarin* from the Vice-Roy to inform, that to obtain their Suit, they could not give the Emperor's Council at *Pe-king* less than three hundred *Tail* of Silver. The Ambassadors answered, that if their Business could not be done without Bribes, it would be better for them to depart; and finding, after they had offered an hundred and thirty-five *Tail*, that the same Demand was daily repeated, they began to send their Goods on-board in order to be gone. The Vice-Roy seeing this, sent Word, that they must not stir till farther Advice from *Pe-king*, and accepted a Note for an hundred and thirty-five *Tail*: After which, on the nineteenth of September, they invited the Ambassadors to a splendid Feast in an open Plain near their Lodgings, where ten stately Tents were pitched for that Purpose. That of the Vice-Roy was erected in the Middle, on the Left of which stood the Ambassadors, and on the Right the Tent for the Music. The Ambassadors were led from their Tent in great Pomp by two of the chief *Maxims* in the Presence of the Vice-Roy; and after some Compliments, conducted back again.

MEAN-TIME the old Vice-Roy's Steward, dressed in sky-coloured Silk, embroidered with Gold and Silver Dragons, and a Coral-Chain about his Neck, (which is the Habit of the *Mandarins*) advancing through the dividing Croud, ordered two of his Attendants to serve-up the Dinner. There was a Table spread with rich Carpets for the Vice-Roy's, another for the *Tu-tang*, and a third for the Ambassadors; each covered with forty little Dishes, or Plates, heaped with delicious Victuals and Sweet-Meats. After the Vice-Roy had drank to their Health in Tea, the Steward desired them to fall-to. They were very merry, drank to the Ambassadors, made Apologies for the Entertainment, and asked several Questions relating to *Holland*. About the Middle of the Treat the Ambassadors drank their Healths in a Glass of *Spanish* Wine, which pleased them so well, that for it they quitted their *Suin* *zoo*, which is made of Rice, and not much inferior to any *European* Wines. During the Feast they were diverted with both vocal and instrumental Music. Every thing passed with as much Silence and Order as in a private Family. The Vice-Roy's Children discovered the most po-

lite Education. A little before Dinner was over, they rose from Table, and as they passed by their Fathers Tent, fell-on their Knees and bowed with their Faces three Times to the Ground.

AFTER four or five Months Delay, came the Emperor's Answers to the *Tu-tang*'s two Letters. By the first the Ambassadors, with a few Followers only, and four Interpreters, were permitted to repair to Court to treat about Commerce; but by the second, his Majesty was pleased to grant a free Trade to the *Dutch*, and expected the Ambassadors to come and give him Thanks for that Favour.

THE second of November, the *Tu-tang* of *Horij* came with several Vessels in great State purely to visit the Ambassadors in a most courteous Manner. December the thirtieth, the young Vice-Roy departed by Water with a great Army to quell a Rebellion in the Province of *Quang si*. Before he set-out, he consulted his Sorcerers, who declared that his Undertaking would prove unfortunate; but selling-out quite otherwise, at his Return he demolished their Temples and Images instead of themselves who were fled. These Vice-Roy's were not Relations, but Friends, bred in *Pe-king*; where their Fathers having been put to Death by the last *Chinese* Emperor, they fled to *Quan tou*, at that Time invaded by the great *Kha*, to whom they applied for Refuge, and were promoted to the Dignities they then enjoyed.

THE Ambassadors having taken their Leave of the old Vice-Roy, and obtained his Pass, on the twenty-seventh of February he invited them to Dinner at his Palace; the Galleries, Courts and Halls of which were richly furnished with Pictures, Silk Hangings, and Carpets. During the Entertainment, which was splendid, he sported with his Children, of whom the Interpreter said he had fifty-six. Next Day they were treated at the young Vice-Roy's Court, though absent. The Feast was accompanied with a Farce, consisting of Persons dancing in the Shapes of Lions, Tygers, and other wild Beasts. This Prince's Mother often appeared at a Window in the Apartment to view the Company. She was richly dressed after the *Tartar* Fashion, middle-sized, slender, of a brown Complexion, and taking Countenance. At their Entrance they found a very rich painted Chair appointed for her Majesty, to which, in Honour to her, they paid their Respects.

THE Ambassadors being to perform their *Jour-Propre* for, they to *Pe-king* by Water, hired a large Vessel to themselves: There were besides fifty more procured at the Emperor's Charge to carry their At-

* *Nishiky*, in *Ogilby's* *China*, p. 26, 1709.
Chinese Words

† This Name must be wrong, there being no *+* in the
tendants

1655.

Ninth.

tendants and Goods. The Command of this Fleet was given by the *To-tang* to *Pinkent*^a, with whom were joined two other Mandarins. Besides the Mariners and Rowers, there was Store of Soldiers on-board, under the Command of two considerable Persons. As soon as the Ambassadors embarked, they caused Prince *William* of *Nassau's* Flag to be hung-out; and Post-Boys were dispatched to the Magistrates of the next Towns in the Way, with Notice of their Approach, and Orders for their Reception^b.

SECT. III.

The Ambassadors Journey from Kanton to Nan gan fu, in the Province of Kyang si.

They leave Kanton. San shwi hyen. Chinese Misery under the Tartars. San ivin, or ywen. Dreadful Mountain. In ta hyen. Mong ley City. Shaw chew fu. Lu zu, a Chinese Saint. Five-Horse-Heads Hills. Nan hyong fu. Goods not furnished here. The Governor feasts the Ambassadors. Mountain Ma-lin. Arrive at Nan gan fu in Kyang si.

They leave
Kanton.

LEAVING Kanton the seventeenth of March, they were rowed-up the spacious River of *Toy*, close to the City, which made a most delightful Prospect. The small Towns, which are very numerous between *Pe-king* and *Kanton*, welcomed them by their Cannon as they passed-by. After some Time, they struck into the *Zin*, called by Foreigners the *European Stream*. Towards Evening they came to the Village *So ha*, about six Miles^c from *Kanton*: The Soil is very fruitful, and the Place, though inhabited mostly by Peasants and Silk-Weavers, has many good Buildings.

San Shwi
hyen.

THE nineteenth, they got to *Shan shwi*^d, the eleventh small City depending on *Kanton*, and about twenty Miles distant.

It stands [about a League] from the River^e on the right Side in a very pleasant Vale: It is not very large, but was formerly exceeding populous, and full of Trade. The Magistrates caused the Side of the River to be lined with Foot Soldiers to receive the Ambassadors, and sent them a few Presents for their Table: But understanding that it was not the tenth Part of what the Emperor allowed for that Purpose, they

thought fit to refuse their Civilities both here and in other Places. Here they refreshed in a Tent by the River-Side, before which the *Tartars* exercised their Arms with much Dexterity. One of them shot an Arrow thrice together through the Mark, but four Inches broad, at the Distance of thirty-five Paces; for which he was rewarded with a small Piece of Money.

THE Vice-Roy Secretary, who had conducted them thus far, took Leave, and returned to *Kanton*, having been nobly treated the Night before. They went forward very slowly, being towed against the narrow Stream with vast Fatigue by the poor *Chinese*, whom the *Tartars* compel to haul their Boats. They often slip into narrow Paths, and are drowned; and if any grow faint and weary, there is one who follows and never leaves beating them till they go-on or die: However, they are relieved from Time to Time.

THE twenty-first, about Midnight, they came to *San-ivin*^f, about forty Miles from *Shan shwi*.

The Magistrates of this City met them on the Way. It is not large now, though formerly situated and populous, till the *Tartars* destroyed it.

HERE the River becomes rapid from the Torrents that descend from the Mountain *Sang wan*, the highest and most uncouth in all *China*. Its many Tops are wrapped in Clouds, which make the Passage at the Bottom dark and gloomy.

ON the Side next the River stands a curious Idol Temple, richly adorned, to which they ascended by Steps to make their Offerings. They were three Days getting clear of these dismal Mountains, where they saw but one solitary Village, called *Quanten hu*. In some Places between the Hills lie pleasant Corn-Fields^g. *Theroux's* Copy adds, that *Sang wan thap* signifies the Flying Mountain, on account of a Temple now ruined, which was conveyed thither in one Night's Time from some Place to the North.

THE twenty-fourth, they came to *Lu-ta*. This small City lies very pleasantly on an Angle of the River on the right (or West) Side, over-against the Mountain *Sang wan*: Its Walls are high and indifferent strong, the Houses and Temples stately. It was formerly very rich and populous; it has a safe Harbour for Vessels against the impetuous Current of this River, at the Entrance whereof, on the Right, appears a very curious high Tower. The Ambassadors Vessel was hereabouts in great Danger, having been driven, by

^a In *Theroux*, *Ping-jin* is *man*.

^b *Dutch* Miles, each equal to three Miles and an half English.

^c In *Theroux*, *San shwi* is *San shwi*; afterwards, *San shwi*, that is, *Shan shwi*; and in *Theroux*, *Kan shwi*.

^d This River, in the Jesuit Map, is called *Pe-kyang*, or the Northern Stream, to distinguish it from the Eastern and Western.

^e So *Theroux's* Copy; in *Osilly*, *Sin yuen*; but in the Jesuit Map, *Tang yuen hyen*.

^f In *Theroux*, *Sang wan thap*.

^g Or, *Lu-ta* hyen, in the Jesuit Map. In *Osilly*, *de sag*; and in *Theroux*, *la tach*.

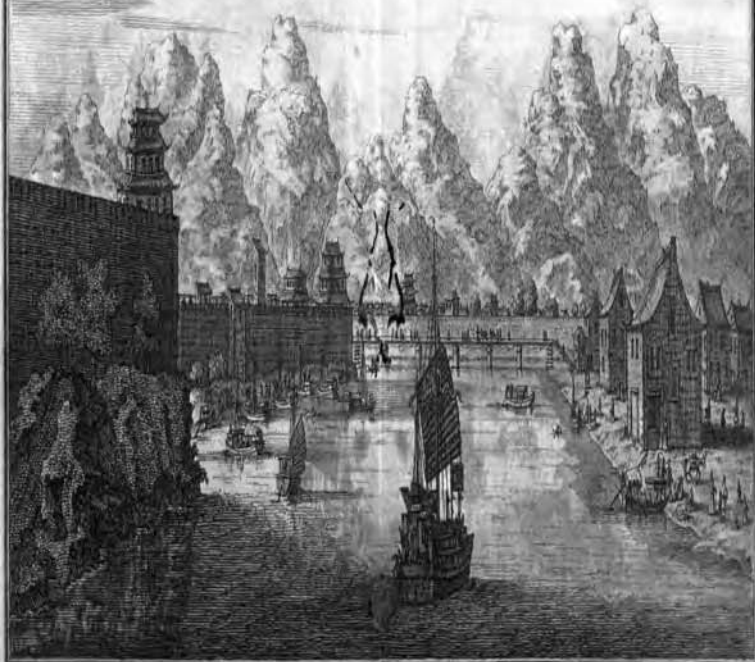
Mountains & Straits of Sang wan hab
on y River Tay, whose tops are wrapped
in the Clouds, which makes the Passage
dark and gloomy as well as very rapid.



A River near Sang



CHINA
SOUTH



Temple of Konjansiam.

Held in great Veneration by the Chinese.



The CITY SHAU-CHEW-FU, from Nanking.



1655.
Ming-ley.

the Violence of the Stream, against a sink & Rock.

NEXT Day, they came in Sight of the wonderful Temple of *Kianianhan*, held in as great Veneration as that of *Sang-tan-bub*: It stands on the River-Side, in a solitary, mountainous Country: The Way to it is first by Stone Steps, and then through dark Passages. After the *Chinese* had performed their Devotions, the Ambassadors visited it.

Mong-ley
City.

THE twenty-seventh, they reached *Mong-ley*, which makes a most pleasant Prospect at a Distance. You ascend from the Water-Side by stately Stone Steps to the Gate of the City: The Walls are high and fortified with tall Bulwarks and Watch-Towers.

THE twenty-eighth, in the Night, there happened a most dreadful Tempest, with Thunder and Lightning. Many Ships were shattered: Some lost their Masts with all their Tackle and Rigging; others driven ashore were beaten in Pieces, and all their Men drowned.

Shan-chew
City.

ON the twenty-ninth, they came with the Remainder of the Fleet before *Shan-chew*, the second City in this Province. It lies about thirty Miles from *In-tai*, upon an Angle near the West-Side of the River; its Situation and safe Harbour rendering it a Place of a very great Trade.

THIS City on the West-Side is inclosed with high and delightful Hills, and on the other Side, beyond the River, has a very populous, rich, and well-built Suburb. In the Middle of the Water stands a curious Tower upon a small Rock; there is a pretty good Wall about it, but within nothing but Ruins; which, however, witness its former Splendour.

TOWARD the South this River is called *Si-an*, and sometimes *Si-ko*. It is formed by the Rivers *Chin* and *Pan*, which meet not far from this City, and make an impetuous Stream over sunk Rocks, often fatal to Vessels, in Spite of the Idol Temple built by the Water-Side for their Protection.

Lu-zu, a
Chinese
Saint.

UPON the *Miao-who*, near a delightful Valley, stands a Monastery with a spacious Temple. It was built by *Lu-zu*, a reputed Saint, who spent all his Time to grind and sift Rice for the Monks, and wore Iron Chains Day and Night on his naked Body. These made Holes in his Flesh, which, for want of dressing, putrified and bred Nests of Worms: Yet *Lu-zu* would not suffer them to be removed, but when any one dropped off, he would take it up again and say, *Have you not sufficient to fast yourselves left? Why then forsake you my Body, where you are welcome to feed?* The Ambassadors pitched their Tents near the Walls, where the Magistrates and Governor

brought several Presents for their Table, which not being upon the Emperor's Account, were accepted, and themselves nobly treated.

Dutch
Embassy.

NEXT Morning, early, they drew near a Mountain, which the *Tartars*, for its strange Shape, call the *Five Herbs Head*. Upon the Tops of these Hills, which are covered with Clouds, and seemed inaccessible, stood several odd Structures, some entire, others ruinous. Just beyond this Mountain they were in great Danger among other Rocks and steep Ascents, called the *Five ugly Devils*, the River being full of split Ships lying under Water. At length they got to *Suyt-jeen*, whose Hills, intermixed with charming Vales, stand along the River in as much Order as if placed by Art. The Tops of them afford a surprising Prospect.

THE fourth of April, they came to *Nam-hyung*, the third chief City of *Quang-tung*, and Frontier on this Side. It lies about forty Miles from *Shan-chew*, is very large and well situated, fortified with Walls and Bulwarks: It is divided by the River, covered with a Bridge: It is full of Idol Temples, and noble Structures. Here is also a Custom-House, where they receive the Emperor's Dues for all Goods exported or imported: But there is no tumbling of the Commodities, or Fees to Searchers, the Bills of Lading being taken on the Merchant's Word.

THERE is no better Mold in all China for making Earthen-Ware. Not far from hence is a River, called *Me-hyang*, or *Ink-Water*, from its Blackness, whose Fish, which are commonly very white, are much esteemed.

THE Ambassadors on their Arrival going immediately on-shore, the Governor and Magistrates sent a Letter of Compliment, and not long after came themselves in Person, and were nobly treated. Next Day the Governor gave the *Dutch* a splendid Dinner. He and the Magistrates sat all at one Side of the Table, that the Dishes might be removed without any Disturbance to the Company. They were not served-up all at once, (according to the Custom of the *Chinese*) but only two at a Time to each Person, in sixteen Courses. When Dinner was over, every Guest had a Piece of Money at the Governor's Feet to be divided among the Musicians and Waiters. The Ambassadors presented them with six *Tail* of Silver, and some Silks, which the Governor at first refused, but at last accepted it.

AT *Nam-hyung* they quitted their Vessels to go to *Nung-an*, the next City on the Road, by Land; but the high Hills and rugged Ascents make Travelling very troublesome. The Mountain called

* In *Ogilby*, *Nan-chew*; in *Thwaites*, less exactly, *Su-chew*, *Sui-eyen*.

† In *Thwaites*, *Nam-hyung*; by the Jesuits, *Nam-hyung*, and *Nam-yong-fu*.

‡ Rather,

1655. *Mu gien*^a, that was more difficult than all the rest, one of the Governors levelled at his own Charge, so that it is now very passable; for which the Inhabitants erected to his Honour a stately Temple. They were carried over the Mountains in Horse-Litters, and to protect them against Robbers that infested the Road, had a Guard appointed of an hundred and fifty Soldiers; which, with those who carried the Goods, made a Regiment of at least six hundred Men.

THE Ambassadors lodged the first Night upon the Mountains, in the Village *Su fan*, about half Way over, whose Inhabitants had fled for fear of them.

NEXT Day, about Noon, they came to a narrow Mountain, which separates the Provinces of *Quan tong* and *Kyang si*. It was adorned with several fair Idol Temples; and though no better than a Wilderness, yet is rendered very delightful by its Woods and Valleys. At Night they came to *Nan gan*, the thirteenth first-Rank City of *Kyang si*.

he drew his Knife and would have stabbed himself, had he not been prevented by one of that Mandarin's Servants.

THE Country about this City is very pleasant and fruitful, surrounded with Hills, one of which, for its Delightfulness, being called *Si hea*^b, that is, *A Place of Pleasure*.

THIS City is divided equally by an Arm of *Great River*, the River *Chang*, which renders it a Place of great Trade; all Merchandizes designed for *Quan tong* and other neighbouring Parts being unladen here.

THE South Part of this City is well built and populous, but it falls short of *Nan hung* for Bigness and Strength; although the *Tartars* were more favourable to it, forbearing to destroy its Fabricks as were of any Note. On the North Side is an Idol Temple, surprizingly rich and well contrived. The Ambassadors staid here four Days.

THE River *Kan* runs here as swift as an Arrow from the Bow, and is full of Banks, Sands, pools, and Shoals; so that, though they went down the Stream, their Ships were often in Danger. In this Passage the Bark, in which was one of the Ambassadors, with the Presents to the great *Khan*, fell into a Whirlpool, and being whirled about by the Eddies, at last ran a-ground, and could not be gotten off till they had unladen her: The Mandarins commanded the Watermen and Master to be severely lashed with a thick Leather Whip for their Neglect; but the Ambassadors interceded for the latter.

THE fourteenth, they passed by the small City *Nan kang*, on the left Side of the River *Chang*. It is square, inclosed with a strong Wall twenty-five Foot high: It has four Gates near a Mile asunder. It was totally ruined in the *Tartar* War, and its Trade destroyed. They landed here at their Return. On the River-Side stands an high Tower, strong and well built. In the Street, leading from the South Gate, is the Governor's Palace, and at the End of it a noble triumphal Arch, which the *Tartars* spared.

THE fifteenth, they came to *Kan-tseu*, the twelfth City of the first Rank in *Kiang si*, and were visited aboard by some great Mandarins in the Name of the Magistrates. The Ambassadors in return visited the great *Tu tang* of this City, who received them with extraordinary Courtesy, and conducted them into his private Apartment, where he placed them on his right Hand. This Officer had the Command over the Provinces of *Kyang si*, *Fe-kyen*, *Hu kwang*, and *Quan tong*, and

S E C T. IV.

Their Journey by Water from Nan gan fù to the Borders of the Province of Kyang nan, or Nan king.

The Ambassadors Reception at Nan gan fù. Great Trade there. A Whirlpool in the River. Nan-kang hyen. Kan chew fù. A great Tutang. The City described. Famous Temple. Van nan gan City. Lin ge iwen. Pek-kin se. Tay ko hyen. Kin un gam fù. Dangerous Rocks. Kye shwi hyen. Kya kyang hyen. Mountain Mung. Fung chung hyen. Nan chung fù. The Tu-tang's Cruelty. City described. Famous Temple. The Philosopher's Elixir. V-syen hyen. China Wars. Nan kang fù. Temples and Monasteries. Hu kew hyen. Peng se hyen. Chinese Superstition.

THE Ambassadors being arrived at *Nan gan*, the Governor sent to receive them at the City-Gate, and with some Persons of Quality visited them at their Lodgings: He sent them likewise a handsome Collation at the Charge of the Town, whose principal Inhabitants often came to see them.

THE Commissioner appointed to furnish them with Boats here, not being able to get them ready so soon as he desired, *Pinsenten* rated him with such bitter Expressions, that taking it to Heart,

^a By the Jesuits, *Me lu*, and *Me lu*.

^b There are three Ranks of Gates, the first, *Kia*; the second, *Chow*; and the third, *Hye*, which last Word must be pronounced as one Syllable; for such are all the *Chinese* Words.

^c *Nankang*, in *Ogilby's China*, p. 50, & 105.

^d Rather, *Si hea*, for so it is pronounced.

*ragged Cliffs made by Art.
from Nieuhof.*



A. 1789.

A. Tarrault

Vol. 3. Pl. 10. P. 409

1655. consequently was not much inferior to a Vice-
Roy.

The Ambassadors offered him some Presents, but he refused them politely, saying, that he did not refuse them out of a *Chinese* Dissimulation, but only to observe the Custom of their Country; which was not to receive Presents from any Foreigners, till they had made their Appearance at the imperial Court.

The City described. KAN CHEW stands close to the River Kan, (on the East Side) in a most delightful Country. The City is square, and surrounded with an high Stone Wall, about two Miles in Compass, in which are four Gates. It is a Place of great Trade; the Streets are handsomely paved, and well built. At the East End stands an high well-built Tower.

This Town abounds with Temples, richly adorned with Pictures and Images, one of which, called *Kuil kye shi myun*, or *The Church of Kuil Kye shi*, may be reckoned among the most eminent in all China.

Round the Walls of this Temple were several Bedsteads for Travellers and Priests to lodge in; for these Places generally serve for Inns. In the Porch on each Side stood two Giants of Plaster, one fighting with a Dragon, the other had a Dwarf lying under his Feet, with a drawn Sword in his Hand. Beyond the River, upon an high Hill, stands a Temple, with a small but curious Chapel near it, where Passengers make Offerings to escape the Rocks and Shoals. If they miscarry, they impute the Cause to the Meanness of the Gift, or some other Fault in themselves.

At the Place where the two Rivers *Chang* and *Kan* meet, the Stream is crossed by a long Bridge of Boats, covered with Planks, at the End of which stands a Toll-House.

This eighteenth, they passed by the ruinous City of *Yamukang*, which lies close to the River Kan on the East Side. The *Tartars* left nothing standing that was any Ways remarkable: It appears to have been a woodous delightful Place, very regularly built, and full of Inhabitants. The adjacent Country produces two Crops a Year; and not far off lies an Hill with a Silver Mine, but the Law forbids the digging for Silver.

On the East Side of this City is a Mountain, called *Chau*, whose Top reaches to the Clouds; yet it is covered with Trees and Plants from Bottom to Top.

Above half a Mile from this Place they saw lying the sixth small City, called *Lingyuen*, which

has a small Inlet of the River Kan running up to it; but the Whole lay in Ruins, the *Tartars* having left nothing standing but one triumphal Arch.

They came next to an eminent Village called *Pekinsu*, most pleasantly situated, where is a good Trade for all naval Materials. A great Way on this Side you see several Cliffs cut in a surprizing Manner, but ruined by the *Tartars*. The Author found one of them to be forty Foot high. The like artificial Rocks are to be seen in the Emperor's Palace.

LATE in the Evening they came to the small City *Tay he*, on the West Side of the Kan, towards which it hath high and strong Walls. It stands in a charming Country. The Streets are well enough paved, but very small and narrow. All the stately Edifices were destroyed by the *Tartars*, except an high Tower and some Idol Temples.

The twenty-ninth of April, they arrived at *Kin un gam*, called by some *Kyngan*, the ninth prime City of *Kyungsi*: It stands in a hilly Country, about forty Miles from *Tay he*, on the Western Side of the Kan. It is defended with tall Battlements: But within all its noble Structures are destroyed by the *Tartars*, whom it resisted; except a few Idol Temples, one of which of modern Building stands in an Island opposite to the City. There are said to be Gold and Silver Mines in its Neighbourhood.

The River near this City is very dangerous, *Dangerous* from the Rocks and Shoals, called by the *Natives*, *Ze pa tan*, which require expert Pilots.

At Night they got beyond *Kye shui*, (a City of the third Rank) on the River *Chang*, along which is a strong Wall fifteen Foot high. It is a Mile and an half in Compass, and surrounded with Hills.

NEXT Day they passed by *Kya hyang*, (and *Kya leang* ther City of the third Rank.) It stands on the North Side of the Kan, about thirty Miles from *Kye shui*, at the Foot of a Mountain. A good Part of its Wall is built on the Hills, and encloses ploughed Grounds. Most of the Houses were demolished by the *Tartars*. Here is an ancient Idol Temple, famous for two Gates, each being of one intire Stone. Not far off stands the Mountain *Mung*, whose Top reaches the Clouds, and Sides are clothed with Woods and Pastures.

TOWARDS Evening they got in *Sin kin*, (a third Rank City) about twenty Miles from *Kya hyang*, which it resembles in Size and Ruins. In the Middle of the Wall towards the Kan is a very high and well-built Gate.

* *Nimiof*, in *Orelly's China*, p. 56, *2^d seg.*

Thoreauz, *Pe kit jien*.

* They are common all over China.

* In the *Jesuits* Maps, *Ki ngan fu*.

* In the Maps, *Kya hyang kyra*.

* In the *Jesuits* Map, *Wan ngan hua*.

* In the *Jesuits* Maps, *Tay he kyra*.

* In the same Maps, *Ki shui kyra*, and situate on the East Side of

* In the Maps, *Sin tu kyra*.

1655.

Nien-shi.

Fung ching
1655.

THE twenty-second, setting sail early, they arrived by Noon before *Fung ching**, (a third rate City.) It stands in a flat Soil, is built square, and surrounded with an high Wall above a Mile in Compass. On the North Side is a populous, well-built Suburb. Two great and high triumphal Arches are much defaced, among other fine Structures, by the late Wars. From the Mountain *Pe ching*, not far distant, falls a mighty Torrent of Water with a most hideous Noise.

Nan ching
1655.

THE twenty-third of April, they came to *Nan ching*, the chief City of *Syang si*, by which Name also it is called by some. The Magistrate immediately sent four very commodious Boats to fetch them ashore, by Reason of the Sands. Not long after they came themselves to welcome them, and caused the *Mandarin* *Pinsenton* to restore to the Ambassadors one of the two Boats which he had taken for his own Use.

Nan To
1655.

NEXT Day the Ambassador *de Goyer* (for *de Keyser* was out of Order) with all the Train went to visit the *Ta-tang*, or Governor. He shewed his Displeasure at his Interpreter for bringing the Ambassador a-foot, saying, *That such Persons as came from so remote Parts, is congratulate his imperial Majesty upon his Victories and successes, ought to be received in great State*: He was also very much offended at the *Kanten* *Mandarin*, calling them *Affics*. After the Ambassador had taken his Leave, one of the Governor's Gentlemen brought him a fine Horse, and his Secretary another, on which they rode to the Water-Side. When the Ambassadors set sail, they were saluted with the great Guns from the Walls of the City; nor would the *Tu-tang* receive the Presents they offered him for the Reason given by the great *Tu-tang* of *Kan chow*.

City de
1655.

NAN-CHANG stands about five Miles from *Fung-ching*, near the great Lake *Pe yang*, and is enclosed with a Stream like an Island: It is square, with high Walls and seven Gates, four of them very handsome. This City boasts four stately Temples, which are very richly adorned, and full of Images. The most famous of them, called *Thi si kang*, is covered with glittering Parables. At the Entrance stand three Buildings together; in the first is an Idol, called *Kan ya*, he sits amongst a great many others on a rich Seat, clothed after the Manner of the old *Romans*, with a crimson Mantle hanging over his Shoulders: On each Side upon an high Pole are two terrible Dragons, with their Necks extended, hissing. Round the second Structure is a broad Gallery full of Idols.

Famous
1655.

On the right Hand, as you enter the first of these Edifices, there is a square Well full to the

Brim, twelve Faces Diameter, and curiously adorned with white Stone.

Deity
1655.

THE *Chinese* believe strange Things of this Idol *Kan ya* and the Well: They say, that formerly he dwelt here, and was very charitable to the Poor; that his Treasure was never exhausted, because, being a great Alchemist, he was possessed of the Elixir, which converts all Metals into Gold: That by Order of their Gods, he once, like a second *St. George*, overcame a most hideous Dragon, which threatened Destruction to the City; and having bound him to an Iron Pillar, flung him into the Well. That at last he with all his Family were taken-up into Heaven; and that in Return for his Services, the Inhabitants erected this Temple to him. Many other Stories were told us of this their Deity. Most of the other rare Buildings were destroyed by the *Tartars*. In the last War, the Province having revolted from those Conquerors, under the Governor *Kaini*, born in *Lyau tang*, after several Battles, he was besieged in this City. After four Months, being pressed by Famine, he forced his Way with his Followers through the *Tartar* Army; which entering the City, they destroyed it with all the Inhabitants.

THE twenty-fifth, they came to the Village *V-syn yen*, famous for Shipping. There was then a great Resort from all Parts of the Empire to hide with *China* Ware. It lies near to the Lake *Pe yang*, on the Side of the River *Kan*, and is above a Mile long: It is full of Trade, and very handsomely built. On the Side of a Mountain near this Place stands a well-built Idol Temple, with a great many black Lamps burning Day and Night. Here those who cross the Lake sacrifice a Cock or Hog, if able, to the hideous Idol for a safe and speedy Passage, sprinkling the Blood on his Body and Claws. They offer-up likewise the Feet of the dead Swine, and the Spurs and Comb of the Cock. The rest they feast-on themselves in Honour of the Idol. The Author saw this Sacrifice.

THE Inhabitants told them, that the *China* *China* *China* was made in the Village of *Sinktsjins*, an hundred Miles Eastward near the City *Fu-chang*, subject to *Tan chow*; and that the Earth was brought from the City *Wey chow*, in the Province of *Nan-king*, but that the Inhabitants there could not make it, because they knew not how to temper the Earth with the Water.

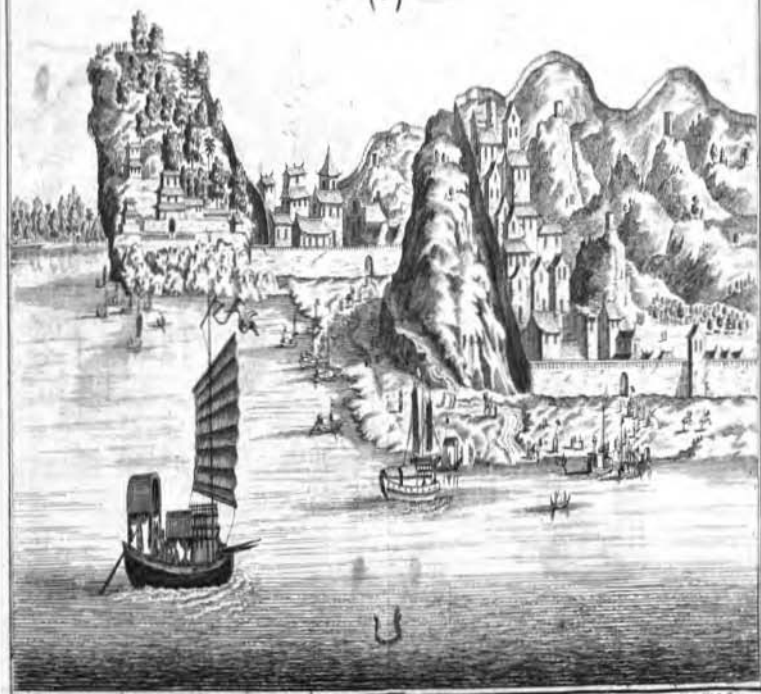
THE twenty-sixth, they came to the chief City *Nan kang* *Nan kang*, fifty Miles from *Kan chow*. It is on the West Side of the Lake, which is very broad and long, on an hilly Ground: The Walls are both high and strong, fortified with Bulwarks, and a well-built Tower in the City. The

* In the Jesuits Maps, *Tung ching* *lyon*.
Yu has *lyon*, in the Maps. In *Terraviva*, *W's* *lyon*.

b Nien-shi, in *Orville's China*, p. 59, *U* *lyon*.
c It should be, *Lyau-tang*.

d Perhaps.

HU K'EW HYEN.
P'EROU.



Streets are very crooked. The first on the left a Hand as you enter has several fine triumphal Arches, but the Houses are mean.

IN View of the City stand several stately Temples: The chief of them are built upon the Mountains *Quang ly* and *Yuen shyn*, where dwell a great Company of Priests and Friars, each in a little Hut or Cell, where they daily discipline themselves with fashing; which the People believe to be very meritorious in another World, for they hold the Transmigration of Souls. They told the Dutch, that on *Quang ly* there were as many Cloysters as Days in the Year. The Country abounds with Hemp, whereof the Natives makes Cloaths for Summer.

THE twenty-ninth, they got to the City *Hakew*, forty Miles from *Nan-kang*, upon the Narrow of the Lake *Pa yang*, and right Side of the River *Kyang*. To the North of the City appears an antique Rock, which hangs somewhat over the River, and makes a most delightful Prospect, being covered with Trees. At the Bottom of this Mountain stands a large and beautiful Idol Temple. The Walls of this City are very thick and high. It drives an handsome Trade, is full of People, well-built, and abounds with Provisions.

NEAR this City is the Hill *She chung*, that is, *Stems-Bell*, so called from the Noise which the Waters of the Lake make in stormy Weather, beating against the Hill.

AT their Arrival both Old and Young came running to view them with great Admiration; but on sounding their Trumpets, thinking to delight them, they were so affrighted, that they ran roaring back again.

FROM hence they sailed Eastward down the *Kyang*, which divides *China* from West to East, to *Peng si*. This Place lies behind an Island on the East Side of the River, and at the Back of it are very high Hills. It is well-built, but far less than *Hu shu*, which is thirty Miles distant.

NEAR this City lies a Mountain called *Syon ku*, so steep and high, that it is inaccessible. It is surrounded with Water, and has on the South Side a safe Road for Ships. On the South Side of the *Kyang* lies also a Hill called *Ma kang*, talked of with Terror through all *China* for the Abundance of Shipwrecks which happen near it.

THE Chinese Pilots seeing the Cook going to make a Fire to dress Dinner, came and fell on their Knees before the Ambassadors, and earnestly entreated them to forbid any such Thing to be done, for that there was a certain Spirit in this Lake in the Shape of a Dragon, or great Fish, who had the Command over this Country,

and could not endure the Smell of roasted Poultry, boiled Bacon, or the like; for so soon as he was sensible of any such Thing, he immediately raised a Storm, which did infallibly cast away the Vessel. The Ambassadors to please them sent Word to the Cook, that they should be content with a cold Dinner for that Day.

ABOUT Noon, they passed by two Pillars which stood in the Middle of the River, and divide the Province of *Kyang si* from that of *Nan king*.

SECT. V.

The Ambassadors Journey continued from the Entrance of *Kyang nan* to *Nan king*.

Tong lyew hyen. Gan king fu. Chi chew fu. Ton ling hyen. V fu hyen. Tay ping fu. Arrive at *Nan king*. The City described. Houses and Ships. Money in Use there. Number of Inhabitants. The imperial Palace. Huge Bell. Annual Presents to the Emperor. Pau lin shi Temple. Famous porcelain Tower. Character of the Inhabitants.

HAVING entered the Province of *Nan-tung* *hyen* *king*, or rather *Kyang nan*, on the twenty-ninth of April they came to *Tang-ku*, or *Tan-lyew*; a small City subject to *Chi chew fu*, on the South Bank of the *Kyang*, in a very delightful Soil, encompassed with fine Hills. It is inclosed with a pretty strong Wall, fortified with Bulwarks: But except one Street and the Governor's House, all the rest is destroyed by the Tartars. Its Trade consists wholly in Timber. Not far from the City, by the River, rises the *Kyau wu*, or *Nine-headed Mountain*, much like the Sun-Flower hanging-down its Head.

Two Miles beyond, they came to an Island called *Sang lo*, and saw in their Passage the first Rank City *Gao-king*, eminent for Wealth and Trade, all Ships stopping here in their Way to *Nan king*.

THE thirtieth, they passed by *shing*, called *Chi chew* by some *Chi chew*, another capital City on the South Side of the River, where lies a fine Suburb: The Walls two Miles in Compass, and above twenty-five Foot high, are fenced with Watch-Towers and Redoubts on an Hill. Near the River stands a Temple, with a stately Steeple seven Stories high.

TOWARD Evening they came to *Tong ling*, *Tong ling* subject to *Chi chew*, delightfully surrounded with Woods, Hills, and Dales. This City, though but little, is well-built, and encompassed with

^a Or, *Pau sic hyen*. Side of the River.

^b *Nienbof*, in *Ogilby's China*, p. 64, & seq.

^c It stands on the Wall.

1655.
Numbel.

Walls. It has a Land-locked Harbour, guarded by a strong Castle, which very much enriches the Place. Near it is a Hill, remarkable for its Echo; likewise the Mountain *Hing*, so named from the Plenty of Apricots which grow there.

DEPARTING hence the first of May, they came on the third to the Castle *Pan*. It stands near the River, in a square, and begirt with a strong Stone Wall. In the Middle is a well-built Temple, with a high Roof, adorned with curious Pictures.

U lu hyen.

THEY cast Anchor a little beyond, under the Walls of *U fu*, situate in an Island, on whose Corners strong Block-Houses are erected; but they have neither Men nor Guns to defend them. This City is cried-up through all *China* for Arms and Lamps.

Tay ping
62.

ON the fourth, they passed by *Tey-tong*, which some call *Tey-ping*, lying in an Island. The adjacent Country, though full of Hills and Rocks, is yet exceeding fertile, being watered by Canals cut from the Lake *Ton yang*, which lies not far-off to the South-East, as well as from the River. At a Distance they saw a high Mountain, called *Tyen muen*, that is, *Heaven's Gate*; because the *Kyang* runs here between two small Hills belonging to it, as through a Gate. Over-against the City lies another Island, all of one entire Rock, called *Hyan*, from the Night-Birds which breed in the Cavities thereof.

THEY were told, that this had been a stately City, and full of Trade, which appeared by three gallant Towers upon the River-side; but it was totally ruined by the *Tartars*.

Arrive at
Nan king.

THE same Day, they cast Anchor before the *Su si men*, or Water-Gate of *Nan king*.

NEXT Day, the Ambassadors went in *Palanquins*, or Sedans, and their Followers on Horseback, to visit the three Governors of this City: The two chief were *Chinese*, born in *Lyan teng*. They were conducted in great State by the Agent of the young Vice-roy of *Kantou*, who resided here, and by two *Mandarins* of the same Place, *Pinsentun* staying behind.

THE chief Governor shewed the Ambassadors his Withdrawing-Room, and made them sit-down next to him: The second was no less courteous; but neither would receive Presents, for Reasons already given.

THE third, who dwelt in the old imperial Palace, sent for the Ambassadors into his Chamber;

which was square, with Benches round it covered with Silk, and a Stove for Winter. This Governor was a *Tartar*, a young, well-set Man; but not understanding the *Chinese* Language, his Sons were Interpreters. His Wife, a comely Lady, who was present, spoke more than her Husband, and seemed very inquisitive about *Holland*: Far from being dismayed at their Arms, she drew out their Swords, and discharged their Pistols, which much delighted her. The Room was presently filled with *Tartar* Gentlewomen, who waited on her, and brought a great Silver Kettle-full of Tea, mingled with Milk and Salt, which they placed in the Middle of the Chamber, and served about with wooden Ladles. This Sort of Tea is always drank-out of wooden Vessels.

VISITING over, the Agent conducted the Ambassadors to his own House, and treated them with a sumptuous Dinner. At Night they returned aboard their Vessels, in which they lay all their Voyage, both to and from *Peking*, except at *Kantsu*, *Nan-gen*, and *Peking*.

THIS stately City, which is by far the best in all *China*, lies about thirty-five Miles from *Tay ping*, on the East Side of the *Kyang*, and in thirty-two Degrees of Latitude. Her Situation is most pleasant, and the Soil luxurious. The River runs quite through this City, whereof some Streams, covered with Bridges, are navigable for great Vessels. This had been long the imperial Court, till removed to *Peking* (by *Hong Fu*, about 1368) the better to prevent the Invasions of the *Tartars*; and at present the Governor of the Southern Provinces resides here.

FROM the River, you pass up to the Town by a broad and deep Canal, about half a Mile long; and then pass-over, on a Bridge of Boats, into the City, which is round, close, and well-built. The Wall is six Dutch Miles in Compass, excluding the Suburbs, which run-out much farther. It is built of Stone, above thirty Foot high, with Breast-Works and Watch-Towers. It hath thirteen Gates, whose Doors, plated with Iron and guarded continually with Horse and Foot, are built on four or five Arches. So great a Number of People passed continually through the Gate they lay before, that there was no getting in or out without much crowding. There is, without this Wall, another strong Inclosure for Defence of the City, two Days

* In the *Tsisi* Maps, *Fu lu hyen*.

* On the South Side of the River, as is *U fu*.

* *Nishof*

observes elsewhere, that the *Tartars* trusted the Natives of this Province, because they were their Neighbours.

* The Author says, he gave the Letter which mentioned the Presents to one of his Officers to read, because he could not read himself: But that is highly improbable.

* Another *Tartar* Lady in the Palace did the same, put on the Ambassador's Hat, and unbuckled his Doublet almost down to his Waist.

* *Nishof*.

in *Ogildy's China*, p. 71, & 599.

* Rather, Channels from it.

* *Nan king* signifies the Southern

Court, as *Peking* the Northern.

The City of LAN-KIN
from Kenbof.



